

teach  
yourself

# latin grammar

goal  
**complete understanding**

category  
**language support**

content

- learn how the language works
- see grammar in real contexts
- reach a high level of competence

be where you want to be with **teach yourself**

teach<sup>®</sup>  
yourself





**latin grammar**  
gregory klyve



Launched in 1938, the **teach yourself** series grew rapidly in response to the world's wartime needs. Loved and trusted by over 50 million readers, the series has continued to respond to society's changing interests and passions and now, 70 years on, includes over 500 titles, from Arabic and Beekeeping to Yoga and Zulu. What would you like to learn?

be where you want to be with **teach yourself**

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at [www.teachyourself.co.uk](http://www.teachyourself.co.uk)

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario, L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the **teach yourself** series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data:* a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

*Library of Congress Catalog Card Number:* on file.

First published in UK 2002 by Hodder Education, part of Hachette Livre UK, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2003.

The **teach yourself** name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 2002, 2003 Gregory Klyve

*In UK:* All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London, EC1N 8TS.

*In US:* All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Typeset by Transet Limited, Coventry, England.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, an Hachette Livre UK Company, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH, by CPI Cox and Wyman, Reading, Berkshire, RG1 8EX.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hachette Livre UK's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number    10 9 8 7 6 5 4  
Year                    2010 2009 2008

<b>introduction</b>	1
<b>01</b> alphabet and pronunciation	4
<b>02</b> verbs: essential terminology	6
<b>03</b> present tense 1	8
<b>04</b> present tense 2	10
<b>05</b> future tense 1	12
<b>06</b> future tense 2	14
<b>07</b> imperfect tense	16
<b>08</b> perfect tense 1	18
<b>09</b> perfect tense 2	20
<b>10</b> pluperfect tense	22
<b>11</b> future perfect tense	24
<b>12</b> to be (indicative)	26
<b>13</b> nouns: essential terminology	28
<b>14</b> first declension	30
<b>15</b> second declension 1	32
<b>16</b> second declension 2	34
<b>17</b> third declension 1	36
<b>18</b> third declension 2	38
<b>19</b> fourth declension	40
<b>20</b> fifth declension	42
<b>21</b> Greek nouns	44
<b>22</b> irregular nouns	46
<b>23</b> nominative and vocative cases	48
<b>24</b> accusative case	50
<b>25</b> genitive case 1	52
<b>26</b> genitive case 2	54
<b>27</b> dative case 1	56
<b>28</b> dative case 2	58
<b>29</b> ablative case 1	60
<b>30</b> ablative case 2	62
<b>31</b> locative and expressions of time	64
<b>32</b> prepositions	66
<b>33</b> adjectives: first and second declension	68
<b>34</b> adjectives: third declension	70
<b>35</b> comparison of adjectives	72
<b>36</b> adverbs	74
<b>37</b> conjunctions	76
<b>38</b> numerals	78
<b>39</b> personal, reflexive and possessive pronouns	80
<b>40</b> demonstrative and definitive pronouns	82
<b>41</b> emphatic and relative pronouns	84
<b>42</b> indefinite and interrogative pronouns	86
<b>43</b> pronouns used as adjectives	88
<b>44</b> participles	90
<b>45</b> present, future and imperfect passive	92

46	perfect, future perfect and pluperfect passive	94
47	infinitives: formation	96
48	infinitives: usage	98
49	imperatives and direct commands	100
50	gerunds and supines	102
51	gerundives	104
52	subjunctive: present and imperfect	106
53	subjunctive: perfect and pluperfect	108
54	subjunctive: uses	110
55	deponent and semi-deponent verbs	112
56	impersonal verbs	114
57	defective verbs	116
58	irregular verbs: <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>	118
59	irregular verbs: <i>volo</i> and <i>nolo</i>	120
60	irregular verbs: <i>malo</i> , <i>fio</i> and <i>edo</i>	122
61	irregular verbs: <i>eo</i> and <i>fero</i>	124
62	direct questions	126
63	subordinate clauses	128
64	relative clauses	130
65	concessive and causal clauses	132
66	final clauses	134
67	consecutive clauses	136
68	temporal clauses	138
69	temporal <i>cum</i> clauses	140
70	ablative absolute	142
71	clauses of proviso, comparison and fear	144
72	clauses of doubting and preventing	146
73	<i>quin</i>	148
74	conditionals 1	150
75	conditionals 2	152
76	indirect statements 1	154
77	indirect statements 2	156
78	indirect questions	158
79	indirect commands and wishes	160
80	dates	162
81	money and measures	164
82	names and places	166
83	inscriptions	168
84	timeline	170
85	Latin today	172
	key to the exercises	174

## How to use this book

*Teach Yourself Latin Grammar* takes you through the principal elements of Latin grammar in a graded series of units, starting with explanations and details of how Latin words are formed (known technically as **accidence**), from simple forms of verbs, through nouns, prepositions, adjectives, adverbs, conjunctions and pronouns to more complex forms of verbs, ending with an examination of the normal constructions found in Latin sentence structure (known technically as **syntax**). After the units on grammar there are some sections on Roman dates, money, weights and measures, names, history and the use of Latin today. It has been designed so that you can dip into the book at any point to study a particular piece of grammar, or progress through the book unit by unit from the beginning. It is assumed that you have access to a dictionary and that you will accumulate your own bank of Latin vocabulary as you work. Almost all the Latin words are translated for you. Remember that a dictionary will give all the various meanings of a word and you will need to pick the right one for the context.

You can consolidate your knowledge by attempting the exercises which accompany each unit. These exercises are geared to that particular unit and contain tests on the grammar point which is being examined. Exercises may also contain simple grammatical elements met in previous units as the book progresses. A key with all the answers is provided at the back of the book.

The contents of each unit will vary a little in size and difficulty and some important items require more than one unit. However, since each unit is only two pages long you will be able to find everything you need to understand the grammar point in a compact area. Clear cross-references are made to other units which further explain any important item which is mentioned but not under direct scrutiny.

It is assumed that the reader does not have a knowledge of the technical terms used in grammar and so explanations for all of these are provided at appropriate points.

If you are only just starting Latin, then try to become familiar with grammatical terms as you meet them in the course of the units. Most importantly, do not worry if the terms seem long winded. You will be able to cope with simple sentences fairly quickly. The wonderful thing about the Latin language is that it has a completely logical structure. Simply follow the examples and consolidation exercises carefully and remember that you are doing it at your own speed so there is no pressure of time and that you can always return to any unit to refresh your memory.

If you already have some knowledge of Latin and are using this book for revision purposes or because you need to read Latin documents for work or pleasure, or just to brush up what you know, then you will find the layout straightforward. Exhaustive detail has been deliberately avoided as this can be very confusing. If you are reading a work of Latin literature, then you should always use a good published commentary on the work. This book does not examine things like literary techniques or the metres of Latin verse.

### **An inflected language**

Latin is an **inflected** language (sometimes also called a **radical** language) which means that the endings of words change according to their usage. We have something like this in English. We usually change the end of a noun if we want it to refer to more than one thing; e.g. one cat: several cats. We change some nouns depending on whether they are masculine or feminine; e.g. emperor and empress. We sometimes alter the endings of our verbs depending on who is performing the action; e.g. I run, he runs. We also change our pronouns (I, he, she, it, we, they and who) depending on how they are being used in a sentence; e.g. I chase **him** then **he** chases **me**. In this sentence both I and me refer to the same person (myself) but the words are different because they are used differently. In 'I chase him' I am performing the action but in 'then he chases me' I am having the action performed upon me. Normally, however, we do not change the forms of words in English but rely upon word order to make our meaning clear.

In Latin things are different. It is a language in which the start of a word, usually called the **stem** (sometimes also called the **root**), does not usually change but the **endings** of almost all words (sometimes also called **inflections**) do change according to how those words are being used. Word order is, therefore, not as important in Latin as it is in English and the verb usually comes at the end of a sentence. At first this can seem confusing



but it is really a bit like a jigsaw puzzle. When you translate you must take care not to be too influenced by the word order. You will need to look up the meanings of the words and then check their endings to find out how each one is being used, just like finding the corners, edges and middle of a jigsaw.

One very important thing to remember throughout is that there is no word for 'a' or 'the' in Latin.

Latin sentences usually have a number of **clauses**. A clause is a group of words which form a sense unit and have a verb. One clause is always more important than the others and is called the **main clause**. The others are called **subordinate clauses** (see Unit 63 for a detailed account). The main clause is the one which will stand on its own and still make sense. Subordinate clauses do not make complete sense on their own. The verb of the main clause is called the **main verb** of a sentence.

The remains of ancient Latin literature which have survived are as old as the third century BCE. Much of the best Latin owes an enormous amount to the literary influences of the Greeks. The surviving literature can be (roughly) divided into early, which includes the comedies of Plautus and Terence (220–160 BCE); the Ciceronian (or early golden) age 80–43 BCE, including Cicero, Caesar, Sallust, Lucretius and Catullus; the Augustan (or late golden) age 43 BCE–14 CE, including Virgil, Horace, Ovid and Livy and the silver age 14–120 CE including Seneca, Pliny, Tacitus, Juvenal, Lucan, Martial and Statius.

One of the legacies of the Roman Empire in Europe was that Latin was used for centuries after 120 CE as the language of European scholarship and literature, for ecclesiastical, scientific, medical, documentary and philosophical purposes. It remains in use today for some scientific terms (particularly in botany) but there has also been a widespread revival of Latin for its usefulness as a universal language. People from countries the world over read the weekly Latin news bulletin produced by the Finnish Broadcasting Corporation on the Internet (<http://www.yle.fi/fbc/latini>), which I strongly recommend.

#### Abbreviations:

<b>abl.</b>	ablative	<b>nom.</b>	nominative
<b>acc.</b>	accusative	<b>n.</b>	neuter
<b>dat.</b>	dative	<b>pl.</b>	plural
<b>f.</b>	feminine	<b>s.</b>	singular
<b>gen.</b>	genitive	<b>voc.</b>	vocative
<b>m.</b>	masculine		

There are 24 letters in the Latin alphabet. The Romans had no *j* or *w*. In writing, capitals are used for proper nouns, adjectives and numerals; not to start sentences.

### **A**Pronunciation

There are no silent letters in Latin and long vowels take about twice as long to say as short ones.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A <u>a</u> as in <u>fa</u> ther when long,<br>but as in <u>a</u> ct when short  | O <u>o</u> as in <u>to</u> ne (although the<br>French <u>o</u> in <u>cho</u> se is closer)<br>when long, as in <u>ho</u> t when<br>short |
| B <u>b</u> as in <u>b</u> ut  | P <u>p</u> as in <u>p</u> at   |
| C <u>c</u> as in <u>cu</u> t, not as in church,<br>cider or lo <u>ch</u>  | Q <u>q</u> as in <u>que</u> en and always<br>followed by u, as in English  |
| D <u>d</u> as in <u>do</u> g  | R <u>r</u> is always rolled, as in<br>Italian  |
| E <u>e</u> as in <u>pre</u> y when long, but<br>as in <u>je</u> t when short.   | S <u>s</u> as in <u>su</u> n, not as in was,<br>treasure or sugar  |
| F <u>f</u> as in <u>fa</u> ther   | T <u>t</u> as in <u>to</u> p, not as in motion   |
| G <u>g</u> as in <u>go</u> at, not as in<br>genius  | U <u>u</u> as in <u>fo</u> od when long but<br>as in <u>pu</u> t when short  |
| H <u>h</u> as in <u>ha</u> ve   | V <u>v</u> as in <u>wi</u> ne, although the<br>Hindi pronunciation of <u>v</u> is<br>closer  |
| I <u>i</u> as in <u>ma</u> chine when long,<br>as in <u>pi</u> t when short and as<br><u>y</u> in <u>ye</u> t when used as a<br>consonant | X <u>x</u> as in <u>ax</u> e, not as in exact  |
| K <u>k</u> as in <u>ki</u> ng (a rare letter in<br>Latin, occurring only in<br><i>kalendae</i> : first day of a<br>month)                 | Y <u>y</u> as in the French <u>vu</u> (this<br>Greek letter [ <u>upsilon</u> ] was<br>used only in words of<br>Greek origin)             |
| L <u>l</u> as in <u>lo</u> ng   | Z <u>z</u> as in <u>zo</u> o (this Greek letter<br>[ <u>zeta</u> ] was used only in<br>words of Greek origin)                            |
| M <u>m</u> as in <u>mo</u> ther   |  |
| N <u>n</u> as in <u>ne</u> wt, but, before c,<br>g and qu it is pronounced<br><u>ng</u>   |  |

**B**Diphthongs are combinations of vowels making one sound.

In Latin they are all long:

ae pronounced ai as in aislе, e.g. praeda → *booty*

au pronounced ou as in house, e.g. aurum → *gold*

oe pronounced oi as in boil, e.g. poena → *penalty*

ei pronounced ei as in reign. Only found in the exclamations  
ei! eia! heia! → *oh! aha!*

eu pronounced ew as in pew, e.g. seu → *whether*

ui pronounced wea as in weak, e.g. huic → *to this*

The diphthongs ei, eu and ui are rare. Mostly when these vowel combinations are found they are pronounced separately, as in tui → *yours* (pronounced twoee), fluit → *it flows* (flewit), mei → *mine* (meyee) and deus → *god* (deyus). When the u follows the letter q it is pronounced w, as in English.

## Consonantal i and u

- In some Latin words the letter i is pronounced as the consonant y at the beginning or even in the middle of words, e.g. *coniungo* (*I join together*: pronounced conyungo) and *iam* (*already*: pronounced yam). In the English derivatives of many of these words the consonantal i becomes the letter j, e.g. *juvenile* comes from *iuvenis* (*young man*), *judicial* comes from *iudicium* (*judgement*), *joke* comes from *iocus* (*joke*: pronounced yocus) and the name *Julius* from *Iulius*.
- The Romans made no distinction between v and u when writing so, for example, in an inscription you might find EQVVS for *equus* → *horse*. Some published texts still make no distinction so you may find *uinum* for *vinum* → *wine*.

When t, c or p are followed by an h, they are called aspirated consonants **th**, **ch** and **ph**. They come from the Greek letters *theta*, *chi* and *phi* and exist in Latin words which come from Greek. They should be pronounced as an emphasised version of the letters without the h but in practice th and ph are normally pronounced as in the English thin and photo and ch as in the Scottish loch.

## Length of vowels and syllables

- In English the stressed vowel of a word is usually lengthened while unstressed ones are not, e.g. *cider*, *boredom*. In a Latin word, however, any of the vowels may be either long or short. In dictionaries and textbooks the long vowels are usually marked out by a line over the top of the vowel called a macron (ˉ). In some cases, it is important to know whether a vowel is long or short, especially in verse, but when you come to read Latin documents you will not find any distinguishing marks over long vowels. In this book there are no marks used over vowels for the exercises and readers do not need to include them. In the explanatory matter, long syllables are marked when they are of importance.
- The length of a **syllable**, as opposed to a vowel, is important to know for verse. A syllable is **long** if it has a long vowel or a diphthong or ends in two consonants, the letter x or a single consonant if the next word begins with a consonant. All other syllables are **short**.

## Stress accent

- In Latin the stress accent falls on the first syllable of two syllabled words, e.g. *pater* → *father*. It falls only rarely on the last syllable, e.g. *illic* → *there* (for *illice*).
- In words of more than two syllables the accent is on the last but one (**penultimate**) syllable if that syllable is **long**, e.g. *corruptum* → *corrupted*, but on the one before that (**antepenultimate**) if not, e.g. *militibus* → *for the soldiers*.

**Verbs refer to actions (e.g. I carry) and are divided into four categories, depending on their usage: moods, voices, tenses and persons.**

Brief explanations follow of the terms which you will meet most often when studying verbs. It is important to be familiar with them but do not expect to understand them all straight away.

The **principal parts** of a Latin verb enable us to recognize the various parts of that verb when we meet it in our reading and tell us what **conjugation** a verb belongs to.

### **A Mood**

There are four moods. The first three are called **finite** moods because each part of the verb in these moods is limited to a particular **person** (see **D**).

- The **indicative mood** is generally used for making statements and asking questions (e.g. Grass grows. Where is he going?). The **main verb** (see Introduction) of a Latin sentence will usually be in the indicative mood.
- The **imperative mood** is used to give commands (Unit 49).
- The **subjunctive mood** is used mainly as a verb in **subordinate clauses** (Unit 63), often to express anticipated or conditional actions. On the less common occasions when it is a main verb, it usually expresses a wish and is often found in mottos (Unit 54).
- The **infinite mood** is so called because no part of the verb is limited to a particular **person** (see **D**). This mood includes the **infinitive** (Units 47–48), **participle** (Unit 44), **gerundive** (Unit 51), **gerund** and **supine** (Unit 50). See under the individual headings for details of usage.

### **B There are two voices:**

- The **active voice** is used when the **subject** (Unit 23) of the sentence or clause is performing the action of the verb, e.g. *The elephant chases the mouse.*
- The **passive voice** (Units 45–46) is used when the subject is experiencing the action of the verb, e.g. *The elephant is chased by the mouse.*

### **C There are six tenses:**

A **tense** refers to the time when the action of a verb takes place.

- |                              |                                   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| • <b>Present</b> (Units 3–4) | • <b>Perfect</b> (Units 8–9)      |
| • <b>Imperfect</b> (Unit 7)  | • <b>Future perfect</b> (Unit 11) |
| • <b>Future</b> (Units 5–6)  | • <b>Pluperfect</b> (Unit 10)     |

A tense can be either active or passive as well as being either indicative or subjunctive. By convention, if mood and voice are not stated then the tense is indicative and active.

### **D Person**

In each tense six **persons** can perform the action:

**1st person singular:** I

**2nd person singular:** you (when one person performs the action)

**3rd person singular:** he, she, it (depending on the context)

**1st person plural:** we

**2nd person plural:** you (when two or more people perform the action)

**3rd person plural:** they

In English we sometimes use a pronoun before the verb (we walk, she sits etc.). In Latin this is not needed because the ending of the verb changes to let us know who is doing it. These endings are called **personal endings** (see under the units on separate tenses).

### Principal parts

When you look for a verb in your Latin dictionary you will find four Latin words in the entry, followed by the meaning. Sometimes they are written out in full (e.g. **porto, portare, portavi, portatum: I carry**) or they can be abbreviated (e.g. **porto -are -avi -atum: I carry**). These are called the **principal parts** because their **stems** (see Introduction) are the bases for every form of that verb. Learn every principal part when you meet a verb.

- The **1st person singular of the present (indicative active)** (Unit 3), e.g. **porto: I carry**.
- The **present (active) infinitive** (Unit 47 B), e.g. **portare: to carry**.
- The **1st person singular of the perfect (indicative active)** (Unit 8), e.g. **portavi: I carried**.
- The **supine** (e.g. **portatum**) which ends in **-um** and has no equivalent in English (Unit 50 C), or, occasionally, the **perfect passive participle** (Unit 44 C), e.g. **portatus: carried**.

### Conjugation

A **conjugation** is a group of verbs which share similarities in appearance (not in meaning or usage). There are four in Latin and you can identify which conjugation a verb belongs to by examining the endings of its first two **principal parts**:

- The **first conjugation** verbs end in **-ō -āre**, like **portō portāre** (*carry*) (Unit 3).
- The **second conjugation** verbs end in **-eō -ēre**, like **habēō habēre** (*have*) (Unit 4 A).
- The **third conjugation** verbs end in **-ō -ere**, like **regō regere** (*rule*) (Unit 4 B).  
N.B. Some verbs of the third conjugation end **-iō -ire**, like **capīō capere** (*take*) (Unit 4 C).
- The **fourth conjugation** verbs end in **-iō -īre**, like **audiō audire** (*hear*) (Unit 4 D).

**C** Verbs taking a **direct object** in the **accusative** are called **transitive**; others are called **intransitive**. (See Units 24 & 27.)

## Endings and the first conjugation.

**A** The **present tense** refers to actions which occur in the present. We can express this in different ways in English, e.g. I **am going** to school, I **go** to school, or even, I **do go** to school. These English expressions have slightly different meanings. Latin, however, only uses one word for all three versions and so the particular meaning must be worked out from the context.

**B** In English we sometimes use a pronoun, e.g. we, you, or they, to explain who is performing an action before using the verb itself (e.g. *we wait*). In Latin this is not always done because the endings of the verb change to let us know who is performing the action. These endings are called **personal endings**. These are the personal endings for the **present tenses** of all the conjugations:

1st person singular	-ō	I
2nd person singular	-s	you (singular)
3rd person singular	-t	he/she/it
1st person plural	-mus	we
2nd person plural	-tis	you (plural)
3rd person plural	-nt	they

**C** The **first conjugation** verbs can be recognized by the characteristic letter **a** which occurs in the present infinitive **-āre** (the second principal part), e.g. **laborāre** (to work), **amāre** (to love), **ambulāre** (to walk) and **portāre** (to carry).

The **present stem** (for **stem** see Introduction) of these verbs also ends in **-a** and this can be seen in all the persons except the 1st person singular.

**D** This is the present tense of the **first conjugation**. Notice the characteristic letter **a** at the end of the stem before all personal endings except the first. Remember also that in English there are different ways of expressing the present tense. The verb used in the example is **porto** -are -avi -atum: *carry*:

1st person singular	<b>porto</b>	<i>I carry / am carrying</i>
2nd person singular	<b>portas</b>	<i>you (s.) carry / are carrying</i>
3rd person singular	<b>portat</b>	<i>he/she/it carries / is carrying</i>
1st person plural	<b>portamus</b>	<i>we carry / are carrying</i>
2nd person plural	<b>portatis</b>	<i>you (pl.) carry / are carrying</i>
3rd person plural	<b>portant</b>	<i>they carry / are carrying</i>

**1 Who is performing the action of these verbs?**

**e.g.** laboramus (*work*) → *we work*

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a orant ( <i>beg</i> )        | f paratis ( <i>prepare</i> ) |
| b dat ( <i>give</i> )         | g das ( <i>give</i> )        |
| c curas ( <i>care</i> )       | h stamus ( <i>stand</i> )    |
| d poto ( <i>drink</i> )       | i laborat ( <i>work</i> )    |
| e probamus ( <i>approve</i> ) | j potant ( <i>drink</i> )    |

**2 Write out the present tense of these verbs.**

**e.g.** ambulo (*I walk*), ambulo, ambulas, ambulat, ambulamus, ambulatis, ambulant

- |                                |                                   |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a servo ( <i>I save</i> )      | f computo ( <i>I reckon up</i> )  |
| b comparo ( <i>I procure</i> ) | g muto ( <i>I change</i> )        |
| c loco ( <i>I place</i> )      | h pugno ( <i>I fight</i> )        |
| d concito ( <i>I hurl</i> )    | i adflo ( <i>I breathe upon</i> ) |
| e voco ( <i>I call</i> )       | j amo ( <i>I love</i> )           |

**3 Translate these verbs into Latin.**

**e.g.** *he cares* → *curat*

- |                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| a we call              | f you (pl.) care |
| b you (s.) are working | g she is calling |
| c I approve            | h it walks!      |
| d he approves          | i I stand        |
| e they are drinking    | j they care      |

**4 Write the present infinitive (second principal part) of these verbs and say what it means.**

**e.g.** *do (I give)* → *dare to give*

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a puto ( <i>I think</i> )           | f claro ( <i>I explain</i> )     |
| b cogito ( <i>I ponder</i> )        | g demonstro ( <i>I show</i> )    |
| c lanio ( <i>I mangle</i> )         | h fatigo ( <i>I exhaust</i> )    |
| d mando ( <i>I command</i> )        | i coacto ( <i>I force</i> )      |
| e praetervolo ( <i>I fly past</i> ) | j appello ( <i>I pronounce</i> ) |

**Second, third and fourth conjugations.**

**A** The second conjugation can be recognized by the characteristic long letter *e* in the present infinitive *-ēre* (second principal part). Notice also that there is an *e* in the stem before all of the personal endings in the present tense, e.g. **habeo habere** (*have*) and **tengo tenere** (*hold*).

habeo	<i>I have</i>	habemus	<i>we have</i>
habes	<i>you (s.) have</i>	habetis	<i>you (pl.) have</i>
habet	<i>he/she/it has</i>	habent	<i>they have</i>

**B** The third conjugation is recognizable by the short letter *e* in the present infinitive *-ere* (second principal part), e.g. **ago agere** (*do*), **rego regere** (*rule*) and **dico dicere** (*say*). In the present tense these verbs have a letter *i* before the personal endings, except the 1st person singular (*I*) and the 3rd person plural (*they*).

ago	<i>I do</i>	agimus	<i>we do</i>
agis	<i>you (s.) do</i>	agitis	<i>you (pl.) do</i>
agit	<i>he/she/it does</i>	agunt	<i>they do</i>

**C** There are some verbs which are technically in the third conjugation but which have an *i* before all the personal endings in the present tense and so resemble the fourth conjugation (see **D**), e.g. **capio capere** (*take*), **facio facere** (*make*) and **iacio iacere** (*throw*).

capio	<i>I take</i>	capimus	<i>we take</i>
capis	<i>you (s.) take</i>	capitis	<i>you (pl.) take</i>
capit	<i>he/she/it takes</i>	capiunt	<i>they take</i>

**D** The fourth conjugation is distinguished by the letter *i* in the present infinitive *-īre* (second principal part) and before all of the personal endings, e.g. **audio audire** (*hear*), **custodio custodire** (*guard*).

audio	<i>I hear</i>	audimus	<i>we hear</i>
audis	<i>you (s.) hear</i>	auditis	<i>you (pl.) hear</i>
audit	<i>he/she/it hears</i>	audiunt	<i>they hear</i>



**1 What conjugation do these verbs belong to?**

- e.g.** cogo cogere (*to compel*) → third
- a emunio emunire (*to strengthen*)  
b mordeo mordere (*to bite*)  
c perfrico perfricare (*to scratch*)  
d sternuo sternuere (*to sneeze*)  
e revincio revincere (*to tie up at the back*)  
f perficio perficere (*to finish*)  
g adsentio adsentire (*to agree*)  
h converto convertere (*to turn around*)  
i debeo debere (*to owe*)  
j invigilo invigilare (*to be awake*)

**2 Translate the following verbs.**

- e.g.** ambulo et (and) specto → *I walk and watch*
- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| a currimus et superamus | f inspicio et probō    |
| b dormitis et stertitis | g fugiunt et lacrimant |
| c quaerit et servat     | h doceo et discitis    |
| d vides et credis       | i ridetis et luditis   |
| e sciunt et tacent      | j salimus et canimus   |

**3 Write out the present tenses of the following verbs. You will need to check the infinitive to find out what conjugation the verb belongs to.**

- e.g.** servio servire (*I serve*), servio, servis, servit, servimus, servitis, serviunt
- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| a aperio aperire ( <i>I open</i> )      | f teneo tenere ( <i>I hold</i> )     |
| b peto petere ( <i>I seek</i> )         | g facio facere ( <i>I make</i> )     |
| c advenio advenire ( <i>I arrive</i> )  | h vasto vastare ( <i>I destroy</i> ) |
| d video videre ( <i>I see</i> )         | i libro librare ( <i>I balance</i> ) |
| e discedo discedere ( <i>I depart</i> ) | j fugio fugere ( <i>I flee</i> )     |

**4 Write down the present infinitive (second principal part) of these verbs and say what it means.**

- e.g.** anticipo (*I anticipate*) → anticipare *to anticipate*
- |                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| a nubo ( <i>I marry</i> )     | f implico ( <i>I entwine</i> ) |
| b mereo ( <i>I deserve</i> )  | g paco ( <i>I pacify</i> )     |
| c arcesso ( <i>I summon</i> ) | h sero ( <i>I sew</i> )        |
| d claudico ( <i>I limp</i> )  | i statuo ( <i>I set up</i> )   |
| e gero ( <i>I carry</i> )     | j voveo ( <i>I vow</i> )       |

**First and second conjugations.**

**A** The **future tense** refers to actions that will happen in the future. In English we usually use the words *will* or *shall* before the verb, e.g. *I shall go*. Normally, the word *shall* is used before the 1st person (singular and plural) and the word *will* is used before the 2nd and 3rd persons (singular and plural). However, when special emphasis is intended, the words are used the other way round, e.g. *You shall go to the ball, Cinderella*. We also use the present tense of the verb *to go* plus an infinitive to indicate future plans (e.g. *I am going to buy a computer*). In Latin the ending of the verb changes.

**B** In the **first and second conjugations** the **future endings** (placed on the **present stem**) are:

1st person singular	<b>-bō</b>
2nd person singular	<b>-bis</b>
3rd person singular	<b>-bit</b>
1st person plural	<b>-bimus</b>
2nd person plural	<b>-bitis</b>
3rd person plural	<b>-bunt</b>

**C** The future tense of the **first conjugation** is as follows. Notice that the stem contains the characteristic letter **a** which distinguishes this conjugation.

portabo	<i>I shall carry</i>
portabis	<i>you (s.) will carry</i>
portabit	<i>he/she/it will carry</i>
portabimus	<i>we shall carry</i>
portabitis	<i>you (pl.) will carry</i>
portabunt	<i>they will carry</i>

**D** The future tense of the **second conjugation** is as follows. Notice that the stem contains the characteristic letter **e** which distinguishes this conjugation.

habebo	<i>I shall have</i>
habebis	<i>you (s.) will have</i>
habebit	<i>he/she/it will have</i>
habebimus	<i>we shall have</i>
habebitis	<i>you (pl.) will have</i>
habebunt	<i>they will have</i>

**1** Write out the future tenses of the following verbs. Remember to look up their infinitives to check which conjugation they belong to.

**e.g.** moneo (*I advise*), monebo, monebis, monebit, monebimus, monebitis, monebunt

- |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a aedifico ( <i>I build</i> ) | f crepo ( <i>I creak</i> )    |
| b misceo ( <i>I mix</i> )     | g sto ( <i>I stand</i> )      |
| c ardeo ( <i>I burn</i> )     | h fundo ( <i>I secure</i> )   |
| d mulceo ( <i>I soothe</i> )  | i narro ( <i>I relate</i> )   |
| e sono ( <i>I sound</i> )     | j horreo ( <i>I shudder</i> ) |

**2** Translate these future tenses into Latin. Remember to look up words you do not know yet.

The word sed → *but* is included in this exercise.

**e.g.** equitabimus sed ambulabitis → *we shall ride but you will walk*

- |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a monebunt et suadebunt      | f flebit et lugebit        |
| b portabitis sed ambulabimus | g ardebo sed mulcebis      |
| c vocabunt et servabunt      | h horrebunt et terrebitis  |
| d manebimus et spectabimus   | i narrabo et spectabitis   |
| e nuntiabunt sed tacebimus   | j aedificabit sed delebunt |

**3** Translate the following into Latin. The verb you should use is given in brackets.

**e.g.** *she will work* (laboro) → laborabit

- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a I shall ponder (cogito)      | f it will please (placeo)     |
| b we shall fly (volo)          | g you (s.) will owe (debeo)   |
| c they will alter (mutō)       | h I shall announce (nuntio)   |
| d you (pl.) will mourn (lugeo) | i they will call (voco)       |
| e she will warn (moneo)        | j you (pl.) will have (habeo) |

**4** Translate the following into English. There is a mixture of present (Units 3 and 4) and future tenses in this exercise.

**e.g.** stupet et ridebunt → *he is amazed and they will laugh*

- |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| a dant sed debebitis         | f aedificant sed delebimus     |
| b pulsabunt et vocabo        | g cogito sed pugnabunt         |
| c pacas et tacebunt          | h stat et manebit              |
| d portamus sed aedificabitis | i paro et probabitis           |
| e ambulas sed festinabimus   | j comparabimus et computabitis |

**Third and fourth conjugations.**

**A** In the **third and fourth conjugations** the endings of the future tense (placed on the present stem) are:

1st person singular	<b>-am</b>	1st person plural	<b>-ēmus</b>
2nd person singular	<b>-ēs</b>	2nd person plural	<b>-ētis</b>
3rd person singular	<b>-et</b>	3rd person plural	<b>-ēnt</b>

**B** The future tense of the **third conjugation** is as follows. Be careful not to confuse the future tense of the third conjugation with the present tense of the second conjugation (Unit 4 **A**).

agam	<i>I shall do</i>
ages	<i>you (s.) will do</i>
aget	<i>he/she/it will do</i>
agemus	<i>we shall do</i>
agetis	<i>you (pl.) will do</i>
agent	<i>they will do</i>

**C** The future tense of verbs in the **third conjugation** which resemble those in the fourth conjugation, like **capio** (see Unit 4 **C**), keeps the letter **i** before the endings. For example:

capiam	<i>I shall take</i>
capies	<i>you (s.) will take</i>
capiet	<i>he/she/it will take</i>
capiemus	<i>we shall take</i>
capietis	<i>you (pl.) will take</i>
capient	<i>they will take</i>

**D** The future tense of the **fourth conjugation** is as follows. Notice the characteristic letter **i** before the endings.

audiam	<i>I shall hear</i>
audies	<i>you (s.) will hear</i>
audiet	<i>he/she/it will hear</i>
audiemus	<i>we shall hear</i>
audietis	<i>you (pl.) will hear</i>
audient	<i>they will hear</i>

**1** Write out the future tenses of the following verbs. Remember to look up their infinitives to check which conjugation they belong to.

- e.g. **salio** (*I leap*), **saliam**, **salies**, **saliet**, **saliemus**, **salietis**, **salient**  
 a **cingo** (*I surround*)                      f **facio** (*I make*)  
 b **scribo** (*I write*)                          g **iacio** (*I hurl*)  
 c **claudio** (*I shut*)                          h **rapio** (*I seize*)  
 d **colo** (*I cultivate*)                        i **dico** (*I say*)  
 e **peto** (*I seek*)                              j **aperio** (*I open*)

**2** Translate these future tenses into English. Remember to look up words you do not know.

The words **sed** → *but*, **et** → *and* and **non** → *not* are included.

- e.g. **curretis et ludemus** → *you will run and we shall play*  
 a **dicam et credetis**                          f **fugient sed resistemus**  
 b **arcessemus sed non audient**           g **aperiam sed claudet**  
 c **fodietis et traham**                        h **quaerent sed non invenient**  
 d **non dormiet**                                i **discedes et adveniam**  
 e **incipietis sed non perficietis**        j **adsentiemus sed dissentietis**

**3** Translate the following into Latin. The verb you should use is given in brackets.

- e.g. **they will not leap** (**salio**) → *non salient*  
 a I shall dig (**fodio**)                        f they will arrive (**advenio**)  
 b they will not begin (**incipio**)           g she will capture (**cipio**)  
 c you (s.) will not play (**ludo**)           h you (pl.) will not believe (**credo**)  
 d he will agree (**adsentio**)                i we shall not yield (**cedo**)  
 e I shall run (**curro**) but you (s.)       j they will sleep (**dormio**) but we  
     will resist (**resisto**)                      shall drag (**traho**)

**4** Translate the following into English. There is a mixture of present (Units 3 and 4) and future tenses in this exercise.

- e.g. **dormit et custodient** → *he is sleeping and they will guard*  
 a **resistetis et non cedetis**                f **scribunt et non ludent**  
 b **claudio sed aperient**                    g **non dicent**  
 c **non adveniamus**                          h **peto et inveniam**  
 d **currit sed non fugiet**                   i **dicit sed non credetis**  
 e **ludis sed fodiam**                         j **scribis et non audies**

**A** Imperfect means incomplete and the **imperfect tense** is used for actions in the past which did not get finished, went on regularly, lasted for some time before they ended or only just got started; as opposed to single actions which were completed in one go (see Unit 8). There are a number of ways of using an **imperfect tense** in English:

- 'I was locking the stable door when the horse bolted.' I did not finish locking the door so the action is imperfect.
- 'I used to lock the stable door when the horse bolted.' I habitually locked the door so the action is imperfect.

We can use the straightforward past tense if it is clear that the action took place over a period of time, e.g. 'I wrote in my diary every day.'

**B** The **personal endings** of the **imperfect tense** for all the conjugations are:

1st person singular	<b>-bam</b>	1st person plural	<b>-bāmus</b>
2nd person singular	<b>-bās</b>	2nd person plural	<b>-bātis</b>
3rd person singular	<b>-bat</b>	3rd person plural	<b>-bant</b>

**C** The **imperfect tenses** are as follows:

First conjugation		Second conjugation	
portabam	<i>I was carrying</i>	habebam	<i>I was having</i>
portabas	<i>you (s.) were carrying</i>	habebas	<i>you (s.) were having</i>
portabat	<i>he/she/it was carrying</i>	habebat	<i>he/she/it was having</i>
portabamus	<i>we were carrying</i>	habebamus	<i>we were having</i>
portabatis	<i>you (pl.) were carrying</i>	habebatis	<i>you (pl.) were having</i>
portabant	<i>they were carrying</i>	habebant	<i>they were having</i>
Third conjugation		Fourth conjugation	
agebam	<i>I was doing</i>	audiebam	<i>I was hearing</i>
agebas	<i>you (s.) were doing</i>	audiebas	<i>you (s.) were hearing</i>
agebat	<i>he/she/it was doing</i>	audiebat	<i>he/she/it was hearing</i>
agebamus	<i>we were doing</i>	audiebamur	<i>we were hearing</i>
agebatis	<i>you (pl.) were doing</i>	audiebatis	<i>you (pl.) were hearing</i>
agebant	<i>they were doing</i>	audiebant	<i>they were hearing</i>

**1** Write out the imperfect tenses of the following verbs. Remember to check the infinitives to see which conjugation they belong to.

**e.g.** scribo (*I write*), scribebam, scribebas, scribebat, scribebamus, scribebatis, scribebant

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a maneo ( <i>I remain</i> )  | f venio ( <i>I come</i> )   |
| b munio ( <i>I fortify</i> ) | g lenio ( <i>I soften</i> ) |
| c ceno ( <i>I dine</i> )     | h ambulo ( <i>I walk</i> )  |
| d coquo ( <i>I cook</i> )    | i pono ( <i>I put</i> )     |
| e rego ( <i>I rule</i> )     | j sedeo ( <i>I sit</i> )    |

**2** Translate these imperfect tenses into English. Remember to look up words which you do not know.

The words sed → *but*, non → *not* and et → *and* are included.

**e.g.** laborabamus et fodiebamus → *we were working and digging*

- |                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a sedebamus sed non dormiebamus | f tenebant et vocabant        |
| b pugnabatis et resistebatis    | g dicebas et non tacebas      |
| c audiebas et spectabas         | h trahebam et gemebam         |
| d coquebam sed cenabant         | i ludebamus sed non ridebamus |
| e ambulabat et canebat          | j aedificabam et portabatis   |

**3** Translate the following into imperfect tenses in Latin. The verb you should use is in brackets.

**e.g.** *we were writing and they were playing* → scribebamus et ludebant

- a I slept (*dormio*) but they were not quiet (*taceo*)
- b we spoke (*dico*) and they listened (*audio*)
- c you (s.) did not watch (*specto*)
- d I arrived (*advenio*) but you (pl.) departed (*discedo*)
- e he used to agree (*assentio*)
- f we were dragging (*traho*) and they were digging (*fodio*)
- g she stood (*sto*) but we sat (*sedeo*)
- h he summoned (*arcesso*) and you (s.) came (*venio*)
- i we used to laugh (*rideo*) and they used to cry (*fleo*)
- j I did not see (*video*)

**4** Translate the following into English. There is a mixture of present (Units 3 and 4), future (Units 5 and 6) and imperfect tenses.

**e.g.** pulsabat et aperient → *he was knocking and they will open*

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| a imperabat et parebatis      | f portabamus, fodimus et aedificabimus |
| b non mutabit                 | g currebam sed ambulabam               |
| c parabam, coquis et cenabant | h horrebant et timebamus               |
| d resistebamus sed fugitis    | i sedebant et dormient                 |
| e non scribebat               | j dabatis et accipiebam                |

**Formation and first conjugation.**

**A** The **perfect tense** refers mostly to single, completed actions in the past. In English we use either the past tense on its own or together with the verbs *have* or *did*, e.g. *I carried*, *I have carried* or *I did carry*. There is an important difference between saying *I carried* and *I have carried*. 'I have carried' suggests that the action took place in the past (often the recent past) and that its consequences are still important in the present, e.g. *I have opened the box* suggests that the contents of the box are now of immediate interest in the present. *I opened the box* could refer to any time in the past and does not have the same suggestion that the contents of the box are of immediate relevance to the present.

**B** The **perfect tense** is formed from the **third principal part** (see Unit 2) which is the 1st person singular of the perfect indicative active. The **perfect stem** is that part of the word before the ending -i.

**C** The **personal endings** for the **perfect tense** of all conjugations are:

1st person singular	-ī
2nd person singular	-istī
3rd person singular	-it
1st person plural	-imus
2nd person plural	-istis
3rd person plural	-ērunt

**D First conjugation**

As a general rule the **perfect stem** of the **first conjugation** ends in -āv-:

portavi	<i>I carried/have carried</i>
portavisti	<i>you (s.) carried/have carried</i>
portavit	<i>he/she/it carried/has carried</i>
portavimus	<i>we carried/have carried</i>
portavistis	<i>you (pl.) carried/have carried</i>
portaverunt	<i>they carried/have carried</i>

**E** Some common verbs of the **first conjugation** have different perfect stems, but their endings are always the same, e.g. **do**, **dare**, *dedi*, **datum** (*give*), **sto**, **stare**, *steti*, **statum** (*stand*) and **seco**, **secare**, *secui*, **sectum** (*cut*).



**1** What is the third principal part of the following verbs? Write out the word in full. The verbs are from different conjugations.

**e.g.** *terreo* (*I frighten*) → *terrui*

- |                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a <i>timeo</i> ( <i>I fear</i> )    | f <i>traho</i> ( <i>I drag</i> )     |
| b <i>paro</i> ( <i>I prepare</i> )  | g <i>tango</i> ( <i>I touch</i> )    |
| c <i>rego</i> ( <i>I rule</i> )     | h <i>spargo</i> ( <i>I scatter</i> ) |
| d <i>cubo</i> ( <i>I lie down</i> ) | i <i>frango</i> ( <i>I break</i> )   |
| e <i>facio</i> ( <i>I make</i> )    | j <i>sentio</i> ( <i>I feel</i> )    |

**2** Write out the perfect tenses of the following first conjugation verbs. Remember that you will need to look up the verb to find the third principal part.

**e.g.** *sto* (*I stand*), *steti*, *stetisti*, *stetit*, *stetimus*, *stetistis*, *steterunt*

- |                                      |                                    |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a <i>demonstro</i> ( <i>I show</i> ) | f <i>iuvo</i> ( <i>I help</i> )    |
| b <i>seco</i> ( <i>I cut</i> )       | g <i>ambulo</i> ( <i>I walk</i> )  |
| c <i>do</i> ( <i>I give</i> )        | h <i>mico</i> ( <i>I glitter</i> ) |
| d <i>curo</i> ( <i>I care for</i> )  | i <i>amo</i> ( <i>I love</i> )     |
| e <i>veto</i> ( <i>I forbid</i> )    | j <i>neco</i> ( <i>I slay</i> )    |

**3** Translate the following perfect tense first conjugation verbs into English.

**e.g.** *stetimus* → *we stood*

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| a <i>aedificavisti</i> | f <i>comparaverunt</i> |
| b <i>dederunt</i>      | g <i>paravit</i>       |
| c <i>appellavi</i>     | h <i>oravi</i>         |
| d <i>servavisti</i>    | i <i>secuisti</i>      |
| e <i>locavimus</i>     | j <i>vetuimus</i>      |

**4** Translate the following into the perfect tense of the first conjugation in Latin. The verb you should use is in brackets.

**e.g.** *they have walked* (*ambulo*) → *ambulaverunt*

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| a they hoped ( <i>spero</i> )              | f it has stood ( <i>sto</i> )      |
| b we have loved ( <i>amo</i> )             | g she has related ( <i>narro</i> ) |
| c I gave ( <i>do</i> )                     | h I have built ( <i>aedifico</i> ) |
| d they have shown ( <i>demonstro</i> )     | i you (s.) have swum ( <i>no</i> ) |
| e you (pl.) have forbidden ( <i>veto</i> ) | j he has called ( <i>voco</i> )    |

## Second, third and fourth conjugations.

**A Second conjugation**

- As a general rule the perfect stem of the second conjugation ends in **-u-**:

habui	<i>I had/have had</i>	habuimus	<i>we had/have had</i>
habuisti	<i>you (s.) had/have had</i>	habuistis	<i>you (pl.) had/have had</i>
habuit	<i>he/she/it had/has had</i>	habuerunt	<i>they had/have had</i>

- Some common verbs of the second conjugation have different perfect stems, but their endings are always the same, e.g. *fleo*, *flere*, *fleui*, *fletum* (*weep*), *rideo*, *ridere*, *risi*, *risum* (*laugh*) and *mordeo*, *mordere*, *momordi*, *morsum* (*bite*).

**B Third conjugation**

- The perfect stem of the third conjugation has a variety of endings, mostly consonants (often **-s-** or **-x-** but sometimes **-u-**). In some verbs the vowel of the stem also changes, as in our model verb *ago*, *agere*, *egi*, *actum* (*do*):

egi	<i>I did/have done</i>	egimus	<i>we did/have done</i>
egisti	<i>you (s.) did/have done</i>	egistis	<i>you (pl.) did/have done</i>
egit	<i>he/she/it did/has done</i>	egerunt	<i>they did/have done</i>

- The variety of stems can be seen from this selection: *premo*, *premere*, *pressi*, *pressum* (*press*); *rego*, *regere*, *rexii*, *rectum* (*rule*); *colo*, *colere*, *colui*, *cultum* (*worship*); *cresco*, *crescere*, *crevi*, *cretum* (*grow*); *peto*, *petere*, *petivi*, *petitum* (*seek*); *cado*, *cadere*, *cecidii*, *casum* (*fall*); *acuio*, *acuere*, *acui*, *acutum* (*sharpen*) and *capio*, *capere*, *cepi*, *captum* (*take*).

**C Fourth conjugation**

- The perfect stem of the fourth conjugation is usually **-iv-** or **-i-**:

audivi or audii	<i>I heard/have heard</i>
audivisti or audiisti	<i>you (s.) heard/have heard</i>
audivit or audiit	<i>he/she/it heard/has heard</i>
audivimus or audiimus	<i>we heard/have heard</i>
audivistis or audiistis	<i>you (pl.) heard/have heard</i>
audiverunt or audierunt	<i>they heard/have heard</i>

- Some of these verbs have different perfect stems, e.g. *aperio*, *aperire*, *aperui*, *apertum* (*open*); *haurio*, *haurire*, *hausi*, *haustum* (*draw*) and *venio*, *venire*, *veni*, *ventum* (*come*).

**1** It is important to be able to find out which verb a particular perfect stem belongs to. Use your dictionary to find out which verb the following perfect tenses come from and translate the verb. You should look for a verb which starts with the same few letters and check the third principal part. This will take some patience but do not give up because you will be practising a very important skill. There is a mixture of conjugations in this exercise.

*e.g.* **movi** → *moveo* (*I move*)

- |           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| a credidi | f vinxi     |
| b vetui   | g sedi      |
| c veni    | h custodivi |
| d vidi    | i tenui     |
| e potavi  | j fugi      |

**2** Write out the perfect tenses of the following verbs. There is a mixture of conjugations.

*e.g.* **scribo** (*I write*), scripsi, scripsisti, scripsit, scripsimus, scripsistis, scripserunt

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a quaero ( <i>I seek</i> )     | f ludo ( <i>I play</i> )     |
| b cedo ( <i>I yield</i> )      | g vinco ( <i>I conquer</i> ) |
| c pono ( <i>I put</i> )        | h curro ( <i>I run</i> )     |
| d effluo ( <i>I rush out</i> ) | i rideo ( <i>I smile</i> )   |
| e rumpo ( <i>I burst</i> )     |                              |

**3** Translate the following into the perfect tense in Latin. The verb you should use is in brackets.

*e.g.* **we have heard** → *audivimus*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a he has found ( <i>invenio</i> )        | f you (s.) have said ( <i>dico</i> )   |
| b they have seen ( <i>video</i> )        | g they led ( <i>duco</i> )             |
| c you (pl.) have waited ( <i>maneo</i> ) | h she has captured ( <i>capio</i> )    |
| d I dragged ( <i>traho</i> )             | i it has thundered ( <i>tono</i> )     |
| e we have worshipped ( <i>colo</i> )     | j they have pondered ( <i>cogito</i> ) |

**4** Translate the following perfect tenses into English. Remember to look up the verb carefully, as in Exercise 1.

*e.g.* **timuerunt** → *they feared*

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| a effluxit     | f duxit        |
| b pressistis   | g collocavimus |
| c lusi         | h posuimus     |
| d quaesiverunt | i ceperunt     |
| e risisti      | j posuisti     |

**A** The **pluperfect tense** is expressed in English by using *had* before the past participle of the verb to indicate an action which occurred at two stages back in the past, e.g. *When the horse had bolted, I shut the stable door*. The shutting of the door took place in the past and the horse bolting took place at a stage even further back in the past, so the pluperfect is used.

**B** The **pluperfect tense** is formed by adding the following **personal endings** onto a verb's perfect stem (Unit 8 **B**):

1st person singular	<b>-eram</b>
2nd person singular	<b>-erās</b>
3rd person singular	<b>-erat</b>
1st person plural	<b>-erāmus</b>
2nd person plural	<b>-erātis</b>
3rd person plural	<b>-erant</b>

**C** The following are examples of the **pluperfect tense** from each conjugation:

First conjugation	
portaveram	<i>I had carried</i>
portaveras	<i>you (s.) had carried</i>
portaverat	<i>he/she/it had carried</i>
portaveramus	<i>we had carried</i>
portaveratis	<i>you (pl.) had carried</i>
portaverant	<i>they had carried</i>

Second conjugation	
habueram	<i>I had had</i>
habueras	<i>you (s.) had had</i>
habuerat	<i>he/she/it had had</i>
habueramus	<i>we had had</i>
habueratis	<i>you (pl.) had had</i>
habuerant	<i>they had had</i>

Third conjugation	
egeram	<i>I had done</i>
egeas	<i>you (s.) had done</i>
egerat	<i>he/she/it had done</i>
egeramus	<i>we had done</i>
egeratis	<i>you (pl.) had done</i>
egerant	<i>they had done</i>

Fourth conjugation	
audi(v)eram	<i>I had heard</i>
audi(v)eras	<i>you (s.) had heard</i>
audi(v)erat	<i>he/she/it had heard</i>
audi(v)eramus	<i>we had heard</i>
audi(v)eratis	<i>you (pl.) had heard</i>
audi(v)erant	<i>they had heard</i>

**1 Write out the pluperfect tenses of the following verbs.**

**e.g.** sentio (*I feel*), senseram, senseras, senserat, senseramus, senseratis, senserant

a mordeo (*I bite*)

f capto (*I try to capture*)

b titillo (*I tickle*)

g mitto (*I send*)

c solvo (*I undo*)

h reduco (*I lead back*)

d postulo (*I demand*)

i statuo (*I establish*)

e emano (*I leak out*)

j verbero (*I beat*)

**2 Translate the following pluperfects into English. Remember to check which verb they come from.**

**e.g.** posueram → *I had placed*

a monueratis

f luserat

b comparaverant

g inspexeratis

c ceperam

h concesserant

d amaveramus

i foderas

e cucurreras

j vetueram

**3 Translate the following into Latin. The verb you should use is in brackets.**

**e.g.** you (pl.) *had slept* → dormiveratis

a we had stood (sto)

f it had slept (dormio)

b you (s.) had waited (maneo)

g you (pl.) had thrown (iacio)

c I had thought (puto)

h I had sat (sedeo)

d they had caught (capio)

i he had guarded (custodio)

e she had escaped (effugio)

j we had placed (pono)

**4 Translate the following into English. This exercise contains a mixture of perfect (Units 8 and 9) and pluperfect tenses. Remember to check the verbs in your dictionary.**

**e.g.** mansi sed discesseras → *I remained but you (s.) had left*

a non celaveram sed  
fleverunt

f ambulaverunt sed  
cucurreramus

b dormivit et laboraveratis

g docuerat et audiverant

c aedificaveramus sed  
deleverunt

h spectaveras sed non vidisti

i non mutaveratis

d portaverant et foderamus

j coxeram et cenaverunt

e clauserat sed aperui

**A** The **future perfect tense** refers to an action which will have taken place by a certain time in the future. In English, as the name of the tense suggests, we use the auxiliary verbs *will* (the future element) and *have* (the perfect element), e.g. *they will have decided by the end of the day*.

**B** The **future perfect tense** is formed by adding the following personal endings onto a verb's **perfect stem** (see Unit 8 **B**):

1st person singular	<b>-erō</b>
2nd person singular	<b>-eris</b>
3rd person singular	<b>-erit</b>
1st person plural	<b>-erimus</b>
2nd person plural	<b>-eritis</b>
3rd person plural	<b>-erint</b>

**C** The following are examples of the **future perfect tense** from each conjugation:

First conjugation	
portavero	<i>I shall have carried</i>
portaveris	<i>you (s.) will have carried</i>
portaverit	<i>he/she/it will have carried</i>
portaverimus	<i>we shall have carried</i>
portaveritis	<i>you (pl.) will have carried</i>
portaverint	<i>they will have carried</i>

Second conjugation	
habuero	<i>I shall have had</i>
habueris	<i>you (s.) will have had</i>
habuerit	<i>he/she/it will have had</i>
habuerimus	<i>we shall have had</i>
habueritis	<i>you (pl.) will have had</i>
habuerint	<i>they will have had</i>

Third conjugation	
egero	<i>I shall have done</i>
egeris	<i>you (s.) will have done</i>
egerit	<i>he/she/it will have done</i>
egerimus	<i>we shall have done</i>
egeritis	<i>you (pl.) will have done</i>
egerint	<i>they will have done</i>

Fourth conjugation	
audi(v)ero	<i>I shall have heard</i>
audi(v)eris	<i>you (s.) will have heard</i>
audi(v)erit	<i>he/she/it will have heard</i>
audi(v)erimus	<i>we shall have heard</i>
audi(v)eritis	<i>you (pl.) will have heard</i>
audi(v)erint	<i>they will have heard</i>

**1 Write out the future perfect tenses of these verbs.**

e.g. mitto (*I send*), misero, miseris, miserit, miserimus, miseritis, miserint

- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a cano ( <i>I sing</i> )       | f praebeo ( <i>I offer</i> )  |
| b accipio ( <i>I receive</i> ) | g compleo ( <i>I fill</i> )   |
| c verto ( <i>I turn</i> )      | h veho ( <i>I convey</i> )    |
| d tendo ( <i>I stretch</i> )   | i surgo ( <i>I rise</i> )     |
| e trado ( <i>I betray</i> )    | j discedo ( <i>I depart</i> ) |

**2 Translate the following future perfect tenses into English. Remember to check which verb they come from.**

e.g. traxerint → *they will have dragged*

- |              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| a duxeris    | f ambulaverimus |
| b manseritis | g cepero        |
| c vocavero   | h venerint      |
| d monuerint  | i posueris      |
| e feceritis  | j discesserimus |

**3 Translate the following into Latin. The verbs you should use are in brackets.**

e.g. we shall have seen → *viderimus*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a she will have felt ( <i>sentio</i> )      | g we shall have lived ( <i>vivo</i> )          |
| b it will have changed ( <i>muto</i> )      | h you (s.) will have sought ( <i>peto</i> )    |
| c they will have watched ( <i>specto</i> )  | i they will have assembled ( <i>convenio</i> ) |
| d I shall have owed ( <i>debeo</i> )        | j I shall have turned ( <i>verto</i> )         |
| e he will have wept ( <i>fleo</i> )         |  |
| f you (pl.) will have made ( <i>facio</i> ) |  |

**4 Translate the following into English. This exercise contains a mixture of perfect (Units 8 and 9) and future perfect tenses. Remember to check the verbs in your dictionary.**

e.g. advenero sed discessit → *I shall have arrived but he has left*

- |                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a timui et timueris               | f cucurreris sed ambulavero |
| b mansitis sed effugerint         | g narravit et audiverint    |
| c laboraverimus et dormiveritis   | h imperavit et paruerint    |
| d dederō et acceperit             | i rogavisti et responderit  |
| e discesserint sed non advenistis | j coxit et cenavero         |

**A** The verb **sum, esse, fui** (there is no supine [see Unit 50 **C**]) (*to be*) is irregular in formation. The **indicative** tenses follow. For the **subjunctive** tenses and other moods, see Unit 58 **A**.

- **Present tense**

sum	<i>I am</i>
es	<i>you (s.) are</i>
est	<i>he/she/it is</i>
sumus	<i>we are</i>
estis	<i>you (pl.) are</i>
sunt	<i>they are</i>

- **Future tense**

ero	<i>I shall be</i>
eris	<i>you (s.) will be</i>
erit	<i>he/she/it will be</i>
erimus	<i>we shall be</i>
eritis	<i>you (pl.) will be</i>
erunt	<i>they will be</i>

- **Imperfect tense**

eram	<i>I was</i>
eras	<i>you (s.) were</i>
erat	<i>he/she/it was</i>
eramus	<i>we were</i>
eratis	<i>you (pl.) were</i>
erant	<i>they were</i>

- **Perfect tense**

fui	<i>I have been</i>
fuisti	<i>you (s.) have been</i>
fuit	<i>he/she/it has been</i>
fuimus	<i>we have been</i>
fuistis	<i>you (pl.) have been</i>
fuerunt	<i>they have been</i>

- **Pluperfect tense**

fueram	<i>I had been</i>
fueras	<i>you (s.) had been</i>
fuerat	<i>he/she/it had been</i>
fueramus	<i>we had been</i>
fueratis	<i>you (pl.) had been</i>
fuerant	<i>they had been</i>

- **Future perfect tense**

fuero	<i>I shall have been</i>
fueris	<i>you (s.) will have been</i>
fuerit	<i>he/she/it will have been</i>
fuerimus	<i>we shall have been</i>
fueristis	<i>you (pl.) will have been</i>
fuerint	<i>they will have been</i>

### **B** Word order

- At the beginning of a sentence without a specific subject (see Unit 23 **B**), e.g. **est canis in horto**: *there is a dog in the garden*.
- After a subject; immediately after or at the end of a clause (see Introduction), e.g. **canis est in via**, or **canis in via est**: *a dog is in the street*.

Notice the difference in meaning when the verb comes at the beginning.

- Between a noun and its complement (see Unit 23 **C**), e.g. *Caesar imperator erat* → *Caesar was a general*.



**1** Translate the following into Latin. Notice that *non* → not comes before the verb.

*e.g.* *we have not been* → *non fuimus*

- a I shall be
- b it is not
- c we used to be
- d they were being
- e you (pl.) will be
- f you (s.) had been
- g she will have been
- h I was
- i I have been
- j we have been

**2** Translate the following into English.

*e.g.* *fuistis* → *you (pl.) have been*

- a erant
- b fuerint
- c fuerunt
- d erit
- e sunt
- f sumus
- g eramus
- h fueram
- i estis
- j erunt

**3** What tense do these parts of the verb come from?

*e.g.* *fuerat* → pluperfect

- a eratis
- b est
- c fuerunt
- d erunt
- e sumus
- f fuisti
- g fuerant
- h fueris
- i erit
- j eramus

Brief explanations follow of the terms which you will meet most often when studying nouns. It is important to be familiar with them but do not expect to understand them all straight away.

**A** A noun is the name of a person, place, thing or quality. Proper nouns are used for the names of particular people or places, e.g. Caesar or Rome. Concrete nouns name things (e.g. table or elephant), while abstract nouns name qualities that exist only as a mental concept (e.g. wisdom or mercy).

### **B Number**

If a noun is referring to one thing, it is **singular**. If it refers to more than one thing it is **plural**. Some nouns only have a plural, e.g. *arma* (*arms*), *nuptiae* (*marriage*) and *moenia* (*city walls*). Some have only a singular, e.g. *aurum* (*gold*).

### **C Case**

Latin nouns have six cases, in the singular and plural, which are different forms of the noun used in different contexts. They are:

- **Nominative**

This case is used for the **subject** of sentences and for the **complement** (see Unit 23). It is the 'name' of the noun and is the case you will find first in a dictionary entry.

- **Vocative**

The vocative is the case used when someone is addressing someone else directly. It is almost always the same as the nominative (see Unit 23 **D**).

- **Accusative**

The accusative is used for the **direct object** of sentences, after certain **prepositions**, for expressing duration of time or motion towards something and adverbially (see Unit 24).

- **Genitive**

The genitive case is used to denote possession (of) but it has a very wide range of meanings beyond this and it contains the **stem** of the noun (see Units 25 and 26 and **E** in this unit).

- **Dative**

The dative case is used for the **indirect object** (to or for), but it has a very wide range of meanings beyond this (see Units 27 and 28).

- **Ablative**

The ablative expresses means, association or separation (by, with or from), but it has a very wide range of meanings beyond these. It is also used after certain prepositions (see Units 29 and 30).

There is also a specialized case called the **locative** which is used to denote 'at', 'towards' or 'from' a particular place (see Unit 31).

### **D Gender**

- In English, nouns which have genders are those which are obviously either male or female, like man, woman, boy, girl,



**A** The first declension has mostly **feminine** nouns but the names of some male roles are **masculine**, e.g. *agricola agricolae* → *farmer*, *poeta, poetae* → *poet* and *scriba scribae* → *scribe*.

**B** The case endings for the first declension which are added to the present stem are as follows. Notice the ending **-ae** in the genitive singular which characterizes this declension.

Singular		Plural	
nominative	<b>-a</b>	nominative	<b>-ae</b>
vocative	<b>-a</b>	vocative	<b>-ae</b>
accusative	<b>-am</b>	accusative	<b>-ās</b>
genitive	<b>-ae</b>	genitive	<b>-ārum</b>
dative	<b>-ae</b>	dative	<b>-īs</b>
ablative	<b>-ā</b>	ablative	<b>-īs</b>

Notice that some cases end in the same way so we need to know the context in which a word is used to know which case is which. Notice also that the ablative singular ends in a long **a**.

**C** The model for a regular **first declension** noun is *puella -ae* f. → *girl*.

Singular		
nom.	<b>puella</b>	<i>girl</i> (subject)
voc.	<b>puella</b>	<i>o girl</i> (when addressing her)
acc.	<b>puellam</b>	<i>girl</i> (object)
gen.	<b>puellae</b>	<i>of a girl</i>
dat.	<b>puellae</b>	<i>to or for a girl</i>
abl.	<b>puella</b>	<i>by, with or from a girl</i>
Plural		
nom.	<b>puellae</b>	<i>girls</i> (subject)
voc.	<b>puellae</b>	<i>o girls</i> (when addressing them)
acc.	<b>puellas</b>	<i>girls</i> (object)
gen.	<b>puellarum</b>	<i>of girls</i>
dat.	<b>puellis</b>	<i>to or for girls</i>
abl.	<b>puellis</b>	<i>by, with or from girls</i>

**D** The nouns *filia* (*daughter*) and *dea* (*goddess*) have as their dative and ablative plural endings *filiābus* and *deābus*, to avoid confusion with *filiīs* and *deīs*, the dative and ablative plurals of the nouns *filius* (*son*) and *deus* (*god*) from the second declension.

**1** Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following first declension nouns.

**e.g.** *ianua* → *ianuae*, feminine, *door*

a <i>charta</i>	f <i>area</i>
b <i>insula</i>	g <i>incola</i>
c <i>nauta</i>	h <i>via</i>
d <i>agricola</i>	i <i>nebula</i>
e <i>ancilla</i>	j <i>mensa</i>

**2** Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of the following nouns.

**e.g.** *ara* (*altar*)

Singular	Plural		
nom. → <i>ara</i>	<i>arae</i>	a <i>ripa</i> ( <i>river bank</i> )	f <i>porta</i> ( <i>gate</i> )
voc. → <i>ara</i>	<i>arae</i>	b <i>regina</i> ( <i>queen</i> )	g <i>clementia</i> ( <i>mercy</i> )
acc. → <i>aram</i>	<i>aras</i>	c <i>carina</i> ( <i>keel</i> )	h <i>dea</i> ( <i>goddess</i> )
gen. → <i>arae</i>	<i>ararum</i>	d <i>matrona</i> ( <i>lady</i> )	i <i>cauda</i> ( <i>tail</i> )
dat. → <i>arae</i>	<i>aris</i>	e <i>taberna</i> ( <i>shop</i> )	j <i>femina</i> ( <i>woman</i> )
abl. → <i>ara</i>	<i>aris</i>		

**3** Write out the following cases of these nouns.

**e.g.** the genitive plural of *ora* (*shore*) → *orarum*

- a the accusative plural of *sagitta* (*arrow*)
- b the genitive plural of *rosa* (*rose*)
- c the accusative singular of *vacca* (*cow*)
- d the dative singular of *sapientia* (*wisdom*)
- e the ablative plural of *hasta* (*spear*)
- f the dative plural of *sella* (*seat*)
- g the genitive singular of *ballista* (*war catapult*)
- h the ablative plural of *ala* (*wing*)
- i the ablative singular of *iustitia* (*justice*)
- j the vocative plural of *fera* (*wild beast*)

**4** What case and number are these first declension nouns? If there is more than one possible answer give them all. Get used to using the abbreviations for case and number.

**e.g.** *ranae* (*frog*) → 1. gen. sing. 2. dat. sing. 3. nom. pl. 4. voc. pl.

- a *pennam* (*feather*)
- e *capellis* (*nanny goat*)
- i *fortunarum* (*luck, fortune*)
- b *casis* (*cottage*)
- f *linguas* (*tongue*)
- j *curae* (*concern*)
- c *formicas* (*ant*)
- g *arca* (*box*)
- d *togae* (*toga*)
- h *Italiam* (*Italy*)

**Basic forms.**

**A** Most nouns of the second declension are either masculine, like *taurus* → *bull*, *filius* → *son*, *puer* → *boy* and *ager* → *field* or neuter, like *templum* → *temple*. The very few feminine words in it decline like *taurus*, e.g. *humus* → *ground* or *pinus* → *pine tree*. There are three unusual neuter nouns which decline like *taurus*: *pelagus* → *sea*, *virus* → *venom* and *vulgus* → *crowd* (sometimes masculine).

**B** The standard case endings for the second declension are as follows. Note the long -i in the ending of the genitive singular which characterizes this declension.

	Singular	Plural
nominative	-us, -ius or -er (m.) -um (n.)	-ī (m.) -a (n.)
vocative	-e, -i or -er (m.) -um (n.)	-ī (m.) -a (n.)
accusative	-um	-ōs (m.) -a (n.)
genitive	-ī	-ōrum
dative	-ō	-īs
ablative	-ō	-īs

**C** Most masculine nouns of this declension decline like *taurus* -i (*bull*).

	Singular	Plural
nom.	<b>taurus</b>	<b>tauri</b>
voc.	<b>taure</b>	<b>tauri</b>
acc.	<b>taurum</b>	<b>tauros</b>
gen.	<b>tauri</b>	<b>taurorum</b>
dat.	<b>tauro</b>	<b>tauris</b>
abl.	<b>tauro</b>	<b>tauris</b>

Notice that the vocative singular is different from the nominative in nouns like this (see Unit 23).

**D** All neuter nouns in the second declension decline like *templum* -i (*temple*).

	Singular	Plural
nom. and voc.	<b>templum</b>	<b>templa</b>
acc.	<b>templum</b>	<b>templa</b>
gen.	<b>templi</b>	<b>templorum</b>
dat.	<b>templo</b>	<b>templis</b>
abl.	<b>templo</b>	<b>templis</b>

Notice that, as with all neuter nouns, the nominative, vocative and accusative cases have the same endings in the singular and the same endings in the plural.

**1** Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following second declension nouns. They all decline like *taurus* or *templum*.

e.g. dominus → domini, masculine, master

a discipulus	e colus	i bellum
b frumentum	f annus	j umerus
c ventus	g somnus	
d maritus	h eventum	

**2** Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of the following nouns.

e.g. equus (*horse*)

Singular	Plural		
nom. → equus	equi	a oculus	f ludus
voc. → eque	equi	(eye)	(play, school)
acc. → equum	equos	b legatus	g stilus
gen. → equi	equorum	(delegate)	(pen)
dat. → equo	equis	c lapillus	h pullus
abl. → equo	equis	(pebble)	(chicken)
		d rostrum ( <i>beak</i> , prow)	i animus
			(mind)
		e praefectus	j iocus ( <i>joke</i> )
		(prefect)	

**3** Write out the following cases of these nouns.

e.g. the accusative plural of cuniculus (*rabbit*) → cuniculos

- a the genitive singular of digitus (*finger, toe*)
- b the dative plural of officium (*duty*)
- c the vocative singular of camelus (*camel*)
- d the ablative singular of somnium (*dream*)
- e the accusative singular of campus (*plain*)
- f the nominative plural of odium (*hatred*)
- g the genitive plural of initium (*beginning*)
- h the ablative plural of medicus (*doctor*)
- i the accusative plural of funambulus (*tightrope walker*)
- j the dative singular of ferrum (*iron, sword*)

**4** What case and number are these second declension nouns? If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. dona (*gift*) → 1. nom. pl. 2. voc. pl. 3. acc. pl.

a tribuni ( <i>tribune</i> )	e unguento ( <i>ointment</i> ,	h psittaco
b rivulis ( <i>brook</i> )	perfume)	(parrot)
c gladium ( <i>sword</i> )	f vinum ( <i>wine</i> )	i ovi ( <i>egg</i> )
d tela ( <i>weapon</i> )	g cumulorum ( <i>heap</i> )	j servi ( <i>slave</i> )

## Forms in -er and -ius.

**A** Words in this declension which go like **puer pueri m.** → *boy* and **ager agri m.** → *field* end in -er in the nominative and vocative singular but otherwise the endings are the same as those for **taurus** (see Unit 15 **C**). Notice that the stem (see Unit 13 **E**) of **ager** (*agr-*) does not contain the letter e which was in the nominative and vocative. Words like **ager** (e.g. **magister magistrī m.** → *teacher*) do not have the letter e in their stem but words like **puer pueri** *always* do.

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom. and voc.	<b>ager</b>	<b>agri</b>	dat.	<b>agro</b>	<b>agris</b>
acc.	<b>agrum</b>	<b>agros</b>	abl.	<b>agro</b>	<b>agris</b>
gen.	<b>agri</b>	<b>agrorum</b>			

**B** The declension of **filius -ii m.** → *son* is slightly different from that of **taurus** (see Unit 15 **C**).

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom.	<b>filius</b>	<b>filii</b>	gen.	<b>filii (or fili)</b>	<b>filiorum</b>
voc.	<b>fili</b>	<b>filii</b>	dat.	<b>filio</b>	<b>filiis</b>
acc.	<b>filium</b>	<b>filios</b>	abl.	<b>filio</b>	<b>filiis</b>

Notice that the vocative singular ends in -i and that the genitive singular can end in -i or -ii. The word **genius** → *spirit* and proper names ending in -ius, like **Valerius**, decline like **filius**. Neuter nouns ending in -ium have a genitive singular ending -i or -ii.

**C** The declension of **vir viri m.** → *man* or *hero*, is slightly different from **puer**.

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom. and voc.	<b>vir</b>	<b>virī</b>	dat.	<b>viro</b>	<b>virīs</b>
acc.	<b>virum</b>	<b>viros</b>	abl.	<b>viro</b>	<b>virīs</b>
gen.	<b>virī</b>	<b>virorum (or virum)</b>			

**D** The declension of **deus dei m.** → *god* is different from **taurus** (nominative and vocative are the same).

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom. and voc.	<b>deus</b>	<b>dei or di</b>	dat.	<b>deo</b>	<b>deīs or dis</b>
acc.	<b>deum</b>	<b>deos</b>	abl.	<b>deo</b>	<b>deīs or dis</b>
gen.	<b>dei</b>	<b>deorum or deum</b>			

Romans usually called on deities by name, like Mars or Venus.

**E** A genitive plural in -um rather than -orum is sometimes found, especially in words for coins, sums, weights and measures like **talentum** → *talent* and **nummus** → *coin*. This can also happen with **socius** → *ally*, **faber** → *craftsman*, **liberi** → *children* and **superi** → *the gods*.



**1** Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following second declension nouns.

e.g. alabaster → alabastri, masculine, *perfume box*

a Auster	e administer	i furcifer
b Hister	f aquilifer	j laniger
c caper	g culter	
d cancer	h aper	

**2** Write out the full declensions, singular and plural where appropriate, of the following nouns. Remember to check the genitive.

e.g. gener (*son-in-law*)

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom. →	gener	generi	gen. →	generi	generorum
voc. →	gener	generi	dat. →	genero	generis
acc. →	generum	generos	abl. →	genero	generis

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| a arbiter ( <i>umpire</i> )   | f socer ( <i>father-in-law</i> )   |
| b Lucifer ( <i>the morning star, the planet Venus</i> ) (singular only) | g liber ( <i>book</i> )            |
| c ingenium ( <i>nature, disposition</i> )                               | h socius ( <i>ally</i> )           |
| d Cornelius ( <i>Cornelius</i> )  | i armiger ( <i>armour bearer</i> ) |
| e Alexander ( <i>Alexander</i> ) (singular only)                        | j studium ( <i>zeal, study</i> )   |

**3** Write out the following cases of these nouns.

e.g. the dative plural of aper (*boar*) → apri

- a the genitive plural of liberi (*children*)
- b the dative singular of trifurcifer (*hardened criminal*)
- c the accusative singular of minister (*attendant*)
- d the ablative plural of puer (*boy*)
- e the dative plural of oleaster (*wild olive*)
- f the nominative plural of fiber (*beaver*)
- g the vocative singular of Tiberius (*Tiberius*)
- h the genitive singular of faber (*craftsman*)
- i the accusative plural of magister (*teacher*)
- j the ablative singular of semivir (*half-man*)

**4** What case and number are these second declension nouns?  
If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. deum (*god*) → 1. acc. sing. 2. alternative gen. pl.

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| a libros ( <i>book</i> )         | f fabrum ( <i>craftsman</i> )            |
| b socer ( <i>father-in-law</i> ) | g ministri ( <i>attendant</i> )          |
| c magistro ( <i>teacher</i> )    | h socii ( <i>ally</i> )                  |
| d pueri ( <i>boy</i> )           | i liberis ( <i>children</i> )            |
| e Iuli ( <i>Julius</i> )         | j ingenia ( <i>nature, disposition</i> ) |

**Increasing nouns.**

**A** Knowing the stem (Unit 13 **E**) of a noun is important for understanding the **third declension** because the nominatives often look quite different from the genitives. Take care to check the genitive when you look words up in a dictionary. There are two categories:

- Nouns with more syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative are called **increasing nouns**. These have a genitive plural ending in **-um** and are sometimes called nouns with consonant stems.
- Nouns with the same number of syllables in the genitive singular as in the nominative are sometimes called **non-increasing nouns**. These have a genitive plural ending in **-ium** and are also called nouns with vowel stems.

**B** The structure and case endings of **increasing nouns** follow. Notice the ending **-is** in the genitive singular which characterizes this declension. The nominatives have various endings.

	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
nom.	various	<b>stem + -ēs</b> (m. and f.) <b>-a</b> (n.)
voc.	various	<b>stem + -ēs</b> (m. and f.) <b>-a</b> (n.)
acc.	<b>stem + -em</b> (m. and f.) various (n.)	<b>stem + -ēs</b> (m. and f.) <b>-a</b> (n.)
gen.	<b>stem + -is</b>	<b>stem + -um</b>
dat.	<b>stem + -ī</b>	<b>stem + -ibus</b>
abl.	<b>stem + -e</b>	<b>stem + -ibus</b>

**C** A good example of the **masculine** and **feminine** nouns of this type is **leo leonis** (m.) → *lion*:

	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>		<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
nom. and voc.	<b>leo</b>	<b>leones</b>	dat.	<b>leoni</b>	<b>leonibus</b>
acc.	<b>leonem</b>	<b>leones</b>	abl.	<b>leone</b>	<b>leonibus</b>
gen.	<b>leonis</b>	<b>leonum</b>			

**D** A good model for the **neuter** nouns is **corpus corporis** → *body*:

	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>		<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
nom. and voc.	<b>corpus</b>	<b>corpora</b>	dat.	<b>corpori</b>	<b>corporibus</b>
acc.	<b>corpus</b>	<b>corpora</b>	abl.	<b>corpore</b>	<b>corporibus</b>
gen.	<b>corporis</b>	<b>corporum</b>			

**E Exceptions**

- There are some nouns which increase the number of syllables in the genitive singular but are technically non-increasing nouns with vowel stems. These decline like **urbs urbis** f. → *city* with a genitive plural ending in **-ium** (see Unit 18 **D**).
- There are also some nouns with consonant stems which are non-increasing and have a genitive plural ending in **-um**. Most of these are the 'family' words: **pater patris** m. → *father*, **mater matris** f. → *mother*, **frater fratris** m. → *brother*, **iuvenis iuvenis** m. → *young man* and **canis canis** m. or f. → *dog*. These decline like **senex** (see Unit 22 **B**).

**1** Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following third declension nouns.

e.g. imperator → imperatoris, masculine, *general*

a tempus	e coniunx	i opus
b consul	f iudex	j dolor
c caput	g tempestas	
d miles	h clamor	

**2** When you meet third declension increasing nouns in your reading they will often not be in the nominative case and you will need to be able to look the noun up in a dictionary from knowing only the word you have in front of you. You should look for a noun which starts with the same few letters and check the genitive singular. If the stem of the genitive is the same as the stem of the word you are checking then that is your noun.

Use your dictionary to find out which nouns the following cases come from and write down the nominative singular and meaning. This will take some patience but do not give up because you will be practising a very important skill.

e.g. lapidibus → lapis (*stone*)

a amorum	e nomina	i aequoribus
b pariete	f salem	j homines
c aetates	g virtutum	
d custodis	h pecudi	

**3** Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of these nouns.

e.g. rex (*king*)

	Singular	Plural		
nom. → rex	reges	a flos ( <i>flower</i> )	f anser ( <i>goose</i> )	
voc. → rex	reges	b dignitas ( <i>worthiness</i> )	g laus ( <i>praise</i> )	
acc. → regem	reges	c pes ( <i>foot</i> )	h virgo ( <i>maiden</i> )	
gen. → regis	regum	d aestas ( <i>summer</i> )	i sol ( <i>sun</i> )	
dat. → regi	regibus	e princeps ( <i>chief</i> )	j carmen ( <i>song</i> )	
abl. → rege	regibus			

**4** What case and number are these third declension nouns? If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. legionibus (*legion*) → 1. dat. pl. 2. abl. pl.

a segetem ( <i>crop</i> )	f corda ( <i>heart</i> )
b libertate ( <i>freedom</i> )	g quietis ( <i>rest</i> )
c cineri ( <i>cinder</i> )	h obsides ( <i>hostage</i> )
d honorum ( <i>honour</i> )	i nepotibus ( <i>grandson</i> )
e ebur ( <i>ivory</i> )	j litora ( <i>shore</i> )

**Non-increasing nouns.**

**A** The structure and standard case endings of **non-increasing** (see Unit 17 **A**) nouns are as follows. Note the genitive singular ending **-is** which characterizes the declension.

	Singular	Plural
nom.	stem + <b>-is</b> or <b>-ēs</b> (m. and f.) -e, -l or -r (n.)	stem + <b>-ēs</b> (m. and f.) <b>-ia</b> (n.)
voc.	stem + <b>-is</b> or <b>-ēs</b> (m. and f.) -e, -l or -r (n.)	stem + <b>-ēs</b> (m. and f.) <b>-ia</b> (n.)
acc.	stem + <b>-em</b> or <b>-im</b> (m. and f.) -e, -l or -r (n.)	stem + <b>-ēs</b> or <b>-is</b> (m. and f.) <b>-ia</b> (n.)
gen.	stem + <b>-is</b>	stem + <b>-ium</b>
dat.	stem + <b>-ī</b>	stem + <b>-ibus</b>
abl.	stem + <b>-ī</b> or <b>-e</b>	stem + <b>-ibus</b>

There are some nouns of this type with nominatives in **-er**, e.g. *venter ventris* m. → *stomach*.

**B** An example of the masculine and feminine nouns of this type is *civis, civis* m. → *citizen*.

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom. and voc.	<b>civis</b>	<b>cives</b>	dat.	<b>civi</b>	<b>civibus</b>
acc.	<b>civem</b>	<b>cives</b> or <b>civis</b>	abl.	<b>civi</b> or <b>cive</b>	<b>civibus</b>
gen.	<b>civis</b>	<b>civium</b>			

Nouns which have the accusative ending **-im** are not common. Examples are *sitis* f. → *thirst*, *turris* f. → *tower*, *puppis* f. → *stern deck*, *securis* f. → *axe* and *Tiberis* m. → *the river Tiber*.

**C** In the neuter nominative singulars the last vowel of the stem (**-i**) is dropped (*animal animalis* → *animal*) or changes to an **-e** (*cubile cubilis* → *couch*).

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom. and voc.	<b>cubile</b>	<b>cubilia</b>	gen.	<b>cubiliis</b>	<b>cubilium</b>
acc.	<b>cubile</b>	<b>cubilia</b>	dat. and abl.	<b>cubili</b>	<b>cubilibus</b>

In the ablative singular *rete* → *net* ends in **-e**, while *mare* → *sea* ends in either **-i** or **-e**.

**D** Some nouns which have more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative still decline like **non-increasing** nouns with a genitive plural ending in **-ium**. They are mostly nouns of one syllable ending in a double consonant like *urbs urbis* f. → *city* (see Unit 17 **E**).

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom. and voc.	<b>urbs</b>	<b>urbes</b>	dat.	<b>urbi</b>	<b>urbibus</b>
acc.	<b>urbem</b>	<b>urbes</b>	abl.	<b>urbe</b>	<b>urbibus</b>
gen.	<b>urbis</b>	<b>urbium</b>			

Other examples: *mons montis* m. → *mountain*, *arx arcis* f. → *citadel*, *ars artis* f. → *art*, *nox noctis* f. → *night*, *dens dentis* m. → *tooth*.

**1** Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following third declension nouns.

e.g. *nubes* → *nubis*, feminine, *cloud*

a clades	e vectigal	i clavis
b ignis	f sedile	j iubar
c imber	g avis	
d amnis	h valles	

When you meet third declension non-increasing nouns in your reading they will not often be in the nominative case. As with increasing nouns, it is important to be able to find the nominative singular of the noun you are looking at. This is generally easier to do with non-increasing nouns because their nominative endings are more predictable (see Unit 17, Exercise 2).

**2** Use your dictionary to find which nouns the following cases belong to, then write down the nominative singular and meaning.

e.g. *cubilia* → *cubile* (*couch*)

a arietibus	e oves	i orbi
b ense	f crinis	j conclavia
c cutem	g axium	
d securibus	h fronde	

**3** Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of these nouns.

e.g. *rudis* (*practice sword*)

	Singular	Plural
nom. →	<i>rudis</i>	<i>rudes</i>
voc. →	<i>rudis</i>	<i>rudes</i>
acc. →	<i>rudem</i>	<i>rudes</i> or <i>rudis</i>
gen. →	<i>rudis</i>	<i>rudium</i>
dat. →	<i>rudī</i>	<i>rudibus</i>
abl. →	<i>rudī</i> or <i>rude</i>	<i>rudibus</i>
a puppis	( <i>stern deck</i> )	
b moles	( <i>mass, bulk</i> )	

**4** What case and number are these third declension nouns? If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. *calcar* (*spur*) → 1. nom. sing. 2. voc. sing. 3. acc. sing.

a fami ( <i>hunger</i> )	d bellis ( <i>daisy</i> )	h stirpe ( <i>stem</i> )
b nectaris ( <i>nectar</i> )	e lintrem ( <i>boat</i> )	i ancilia ( <i>shield</i> )
c tribunal ( <i>platform, judgement seat</i> )	f vermis ( <i>worm</i> )	j vulpibus ( <i>fox</i> )
	g artium ( <i>art</i> )	

**A** The nouns of the **fourth declension** are mostly masculine, like **gradus** → *step*. Common feminine nouns are **manus** → *hand*, **porticus** → *colonnade*, **tribus** → *tribe* and **Idus** → *Ides* (see Unit 80). Common neuter nouns are **genu** → *knee*, **cornu** → *horn* and **veru** → *a spit*.

**B** The following are the **case endings** for **fourth declension** nouns. Notice the genitive ending **-us** (with a long u) which is characteristic of this declension.

	Singular	Plural
nom.	<b>-us</b> (m. and f.) <b>-u</b> (n.)	<b>-ūs</b> (m. and f.) <b>-ua</b> (n.)
voc.	<b>-us</b> (m. and f.) <b>-u</b> (n.)	<b>-ūs</b> (m. and f.) <b>-ua</b> (n.)
acc.	<b>-um</b> (m. and f.) <b>-u</b> (n.)	<b>-ūs</b> (m. and f.) <b>-ua</b> (n.)
gen.	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>-uum</b>
dat.	<b>-uī</b> (m. and f.) <b>-ū</b> (n.)	<b>-ibus</b>
abl.	<b>-ū</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

**C** The masculine and feminine nouns of this declension decline like **gradus** → *step*.

	Singular	Plural
nom. and voc.	<b>gradus</b>	<b>gradus</b>
acc.	<b>gradum</b>	<b>gradus</b>
gen.	<b>gradus</b>	<b>graduum</b>
dat.	<b>gradui</b>	<b>gradibus</b>
abl.	<b>gradu</b>	<b>gradibus</b>

**D** The very few neuter nouns in the fourth declension decline like **genu** → *knee*.

	Singular	Plural
nom. and voc.	<b>genu</b>	<b>genua</b>
acc.	<b>genu</b>	<b>genua</b>
gen.	<b>genus</b>	<b>genuum</b>
dat. and abl.	<b>genu</b>	<b>genibus</b>

**E** In some words the dative and ablative plural ends in the more ancient form **-ubus**, rather than **-ibus**. This is always found in **arcus** m. → *bow* (**arcubus**), **tribus** f. → *tribe* (**tribubus**) and occasionally in **partus** m. → *offspring* (**partubus**), **artus** m. → *limb, joint* (**artubus**) and some other words.

**1** Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of these fourth declension nouns.

e.g. veru (*a spit*)

	Singular	Plural
nom. →	veru	verua
voc. →	veru	verua
acc. →	veru	verua
gen. →	verus	veruum
dat. →	veru	veribus
abl. →	veru	veribus
a saltus ( <i>leap, mountain pass</i> )	d tribus ( <i>tribe</i> )	h exitus ( <i>exit</i> )
b portus ( <i>harbour</i> )	e porticus ( <i>colonnade</i> )	i impetus ( <i>attack</i> )
c cornu ( <i>horn</i> )	f ictus ( <i>stroke, blow</i> )	j manus ( <i>hand</i> )
	g gemitus ( <i>groan</i> )	

**2** What case and number are these fourth declension nouns? If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. genibus (*knee*) → 1. dat. pl. 2. abl. pl.

a artuum ( <i>limb</i> )	d tonitru ( <i>thunder</i> )	h luctu ( <i>lamentation</i> )
b abitum ( <i>departure</i> )	e versus ( <i>verse</i> )	i monitus ( <i>warning</i> )
c magistratibus ( <i>magistrate</i> )	f arcui ( <i>bow</i> )	j orsuum ( <i>beginning</i> )
	g partubus ( <i>offspring</i> )	

**3** You will need to avoid confusion between the fourth and second declensions. Look up these nouns, check their genitives and say what declension they belong to.

e.g. sonitus (*sound*) → fourth declension

a coniectus ( <i>heap, mass</i> )	e mercatus ( <i>trade</i> )	i reditus ( <i>return</i> )
b mundus ( <i>world, universe</i> )	f questus ( <i>complaint</i> )	j morsus ( <i>bite</i> )
c quercus ( <i>oak</i> )	g modulus ( <i>measure</i> )	
d nodus ( <i>knot</i> )	h ramus ( <i>branch</i> )	

**4** Write out the following cases of these nouns.

e.g. the ablative singular of gradus (*step*) → gradu

- a the genitive singular of census (*census*)
- b the dative plural of circumiectus (*enclosure*)
- c the accusative plural of currus (*chariot*)
- d the nominative plural of electus (*choice*)
- e the genitive plural of anus (*old woman*)
- f the dative singular of usus (*use*)
- g the ablative plural of fructus (*fruit, income*)
- h the accusative singular of cursus (*passage, course*)
- i the ablative singular of domitus (*taming*)
- j the vocative plural of rictus (*gaping jaws*)

**A** All fifth declension nouns are feminine except for *dies* m. → *day* and its compound *meridies* m. → *midday*. However, even *dies* can be feminine if the day referred to is an appointed day. There are no neuters. Some nouns in this declension do not have plural forms.

**B** The case endings for the fifth declension are as follows. Notice the genitive singular ending in *-ei* which is characteristic of this declension.

	Singular	Plural
nom.	-ēs	-ēs
voc.	-ēs	-ēs
acc.	-em	-ēs
gen.	-ei	-ērum
dat.	-ei	-ēbus
abl.	-ē	-ēbus

**C** The declension of *dies* m. → *day* looks like this.

	Singular	Plural
nom.	<b>dies</b>	<b>dies</b>
voc.	<b>dies</b>	<b>dies</b>
acc.	<b>diem</b>	<b>dies</b>
gen.	<b>diei</b>	<b>dierum</b>
dat.	<b>diei</b>	<b>diebus</b>
abl.	<b>die</b>	<b>diebus</b>

**D** The word *res rei* f. → *thing* has a huge number of meanings. It basically means thing but it can also mean issue, matter, story, object, affair, business, fact, the universe and so on.

When it combines with the feminine adjective *publica* → *public* it means *state* or *republic* and both parts of the word decline.

	Singular	Plural
nom.	<b>respublica</b>	<b>respublicae</b>
voc.	<b>respublica</b>	<b>respublicae</b>
acc.	<b>republicam</b>	<b>respublicas</b>
gen.	<b>reipublicae</b>	<b>rerumpublicarum</b>
dat.	<b>reipublicae</b>	<b>rebuspublicis</b>
abl.	<b>republica</b>	<b>rebuspublicis</b>



**1 Write out the genitive singular and meaning of the following fifth declension nouns.**

**e.g.** *facies* → *faciei, face*

a progenies	f congeries
b pauperies	g temperies
c caesaries	h materies
d tristities	i macies
e perimities	j planities

**2 Write out the full declensions, singular and plural, of the following fifth declension nouns.**

**e.g.** *facies* (*face, appearance*)

	Singular	Plural
nom. →	<b>facies</b>	<b>facies</b>
voc. →	<b>facies</b>	<b>facies</b>
acc. →	<b>faciem</b>	<b>facies</b>
gen. →	<b>faciei</b>	<b>facierum</b>
dat. →	<b>faciei</b>	<b>faciebus</b>
abl. →	<b>facie</b>	<b>faciebus</b>

a glacies ( <i>ice</i> ) (sing.)	f fides ( <i>pledge, trust</i> )
b canities ( <i>grey hair, old age</i> ) (sing.)	g meridies ( <i>noon</i> )
c acies ( <i>glance, battle line</i> )	h spes ( <i>hope</i> )
d effigies ( <i>likeness, statue</i> )	i species ( <i>form, appearance</i> )
e superficies ( <i>surface</i> )	j diluvies ( <i>flood</i> )

**3 Which case and number are these fifth declension nouns? If there is more than one possible answer give them all.**

**e.g.** *rei* (*thing*) → 1. gen. sing. 2. dat. sing.

- a *seriem* (*row, series*)
- b *dierum* (*day*)
- c *faciebus* (*face, appearance*)
- d *meridiei* (*midday*)
- e *sanie* (*venom*)
- f *vastities* (*ruin*)
- g *scabiem* (*roughness, itch*)
- h *eluvie* (*overflow, discharge*)
- i *rabiem* (*madness*)
- j *carie* (*dry rot*)

As Greek literature had a great influence on the Roman world we find many Greek nouns used in Latin, mostly proper names. These took on Latin forms and, often, Latin endings. However, you will meet some which retain their Greek endings. Some nouns are found with both Latin and Greek forms in their endings. They may appear confusing at first because of the large variety of forms but the general pattern is easy to get used to.

**A** First declension Greek nouns are of three types and most are proper names. The plurals are the same as the normal first declension nouns (see Unit 14 **B**).

- Examples are Aeneas m. (a Trojan hero) Anchises m. (Aeneas' father) and Circe f. (a goddess).

nom.	<b>Aenēās</b>	<b>Anchisēs</b>	<b>Circē</b> (or -a)
voc.	<b>Aenēā</b>	<b>Anchisē</b> (or -ā)	<b>Circē</b> (or -a)
acc.	<b>Aenēān</b>	<b>Anchisēn</b> (or -an)	<b>Circēn</b> (or -am)
gen.	<b>Aenēae</b>	<b>Anchisae</b>	<b>Circēs</b> (or -ae)
dat.	<b>Aenēae</b>	<b>Anchisae</b>	<b>Circae</b>
abl.	<b>Aenēā</b>	<b>Anchisē</b> (or -ā)	<b>Circē</b> (or -ā)

- Patronymics are names which mean 'son of' and end in -ides, like *Atrides* → son of *Atreus* (Agamemnon) or *Pelides* → son of *Peleus* (Achilles). These are declined like Anchises and their genitive plural ends in -um.

**B** Second declension Greek nouns are mostly proper names of two types. Examples are Delos f. (the Aegean island where Apollo and Artemis were born) and Pelion n. (a Greek mountain).

nom.	<b>Delos</b>	<b>Pelion</b>	gen.	<b>Delī</b>	<b>Peliī</b>
voc.	<b>Delos</b>	<b>Pelion</b>	dat.	<b>Delō</b>	<b>Peliō</b>
acc.	<b>Delon</b> (or -um)	<b>Pelion</b>	abl.	<b>Delō</b>	<b>Peliō</b>

### **C** Third declension Greek nouns

- The declension of crater crateris (m.) *mixing bowl* gives the basic structure.

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom.	<b>cratēr</b>	<b>cratēres</b>	gen.	<b>cratēros</b> (or -is)	<b>cratērum</b>
voc.	<b>cratēr</b>	<b>cratēres</b>	dat.	<b>cratēri</b>	<b>cratēribus</b>
gen.	<b>cratēra</b> (or -em)	<b>cratēras</b> (or -es)	abl.	<b>cratēre</b>	<b>cratēribus</b>

- There is a great variety of endings in the nominative of third declension Greek nouns, e.g. heros herois m. → *hero*, Socrates Socratis m. → *Socrates* (a philosopher), Orpheus Orphei m. → *Orpheus* (a poet), Dido Didonis f. → *Dido* (queen of Carthage) and Paris Paridis m. → *Paris* (a Trojan prince). Individual entries in a good dictionary will give you any unusual case endings.
- The third declension names in -eus, -es or -is can also form their vocative by dropping the -s, e.g. *Pari* (as well as *Paris*). They can also end their accusatives with -n or -m, e.g. *Socraten* or *Socratem*; *Parin* or *Parim* (as well as *Parida* or *Paridem*).

**1** Write out the full declensions of the following first declension Greek nouns, in the singular only for proper names.

**e.g.** *campe* (*evasion*)

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom.	→ <i>campe</i>	<i>campae</i>	gen.	→ <i>campes</i>	<i>camparum</i>
voc.	→ <i>campe</i>	<i>campae</i>	dat.	→ <i>campae</i>	<i>campis</i>
acc.	→ <i>campen</i>	<i>campas</i>	abl.	→ <i>campe</i>	<i>campis</i>
a	Hylas (a friend of Hercules)		f	Boreas (the North Wind)	
b	Daphne (a nymph loved by Apollo)		g	crambe ( <i>cabbage</i> )	
c	Atrides (son of Atreus)		h	Cybele (an oriental goddess)	
	(include the plural)		i	Cyrene (a city in North Africa)	
d	Hecate (goddess of witchcraft)		j	Hebe (a nymph)	
e	harpe ( <i>scimitar</i> )				

**2** Write out the full declensions of the following second and third declension Greek nouns, in the singular only for proper names. Remember to check the genitive to see which declension they come from and to find their stems.

**e.g.** *Socrates* (*Socrates*)

Singular	
nom.	→ <i>Socrates</i>
voc.	→ <i>Socrates</i> or <i>Socrate</i>
acc.	→ <i>Socraten</i> or <i>Socratem</i>
a	lampas ( <i>torch</i> )
b	lynx ( <i>lynx</i> )
c	Babylon (a city)
d	Agamemnon (high king of Greece)
e	Pericles (an Athenian statesman)
gen.	→ <i>Socratis</i>
dat.	→ <i>Socrati</i>
abl.	→ <i>Socrate</i>
f	Rhodos (Rhodes, an Aegean island)
g	Paris (a Trojan prince)
h	Orpheus (a poet)
i	Chios (an Aegean island)
j	heros ( <i>hero</i> )

**3** What case and number are the following Greek nouns? If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

**e.g.** *Panos* (the god Pan) → gen. sing.

a	chryso ( <i>gold</i> )	f	dorcadus ( <i>gazelle</i> )
b	Xerxes (Xerxes, king of Persia)	g	Tydeu (a hero, father of Diomedes)
c	Platonis (Plato, a philosopher)	h	xiphias ( <i>swordfish</i> )
d	Naxi (Naxos, an Aegean island)	i	Typhoea (Typhoeus, a monster under Mt Etna)
e	Didonem (Dido, queen of Carthage)	j	Zancles (Messana, a town)

**4** Write out the genitive singular, gender and meaning of the following Greek nouns. If you can, try to identify the proper names as well.

**e.g.** *Mithradates* → *Mithradatis*, masculine, Mithradates (a king of Pontus)

a	poema	e	Sophocles	i	Theseus
b	Euripides	f	Eurydice	j	Lemnos
c	Phlegethon	g	psephisma		
d	Tros	h	Dione		

**A** *domus domus f.* → *house* has endings from the second and fourth declensions. The locative cases (see Unit 31 **A**) of *domus* are *domum* → *homeward*, *domi* → *at home* and *domo* → *from home*.

	Singular	Plural
nom.	<b>domus</b>	<b>domūs</b>
voc.	<b>domus</b>	<b>domūs</b>
acc.	<b>domum</b>	<b>domūs</b> or <b>domōs</b>
gen.	<b>domūs</b>	<b>domuum</b> or <b>domōrum</b>
dat.	<b>domuī</b> or <b>domō</b>	<b>domibus</b>
abl.	<b>domō</b>	<b>domibus</b>

**B** Important third declension irregular nouns are:

- *vis f.* → *violence, force*. This noun is defective. In other words it does not have all its cases. In the plural it means strength. Be careful not to confuse it with *vir* → *man* (see Unit 16 **C**).

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom.	<b>vis</b>	<b>virēs</b>	gen.	—	<b>virium</b>
voc.	—	<b>virēs</b>	dat.	—	<b>viribus</b>
gen.	<b>vim</b>	<b>virēs</b>	abl.	<b>vī</b>	<b>viribus</b>

- *senex senis m.* → *old man* is a non-increasing noun but has a genitive ending in -um.

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom.	<b>senex</b>	<b>senēs</b>	gen.	<b>senis</b>	<b>senum</b>
voc.	<b>senex</b>	<b>senēs</b>	dat.	<b>senī</b>	<b>senibus</b>
gen.	<b>senem</b>	<b>senēs</b>	abl.	<b>sene</b>	<b>senibus</b>

- *bos bovis m.* → *ox*.

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
nom.	<b>bōs</b>	<b>bovēs</b>	gen.	<b>bovis</b>	<b>boum</b>
voc.	<b>bōs</b>	<b>bovēs</b>	dat.	<b>bovī</b>	<b>bōbus</b> or <b>būbus</b>
gen.	<b>bovem</b>	<b>bovēs</b>	abl.	<b>bove</b>	<b>bōbus</b> or <b>būbus</b>

- Jupiter, king of the gods.

nom.	<b>Iuppiter</b>
voc.	<b>Iuppiter</b>
acc.	<b>Iovem</b>
gen.	<b>Iovis</b>
dat.	<b>Iovi</b>
abl.	<b>Iove</b>

**1** Say what case and number the following nouns are and whether they come from *vis* → strength or *vir* → man. If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

e.g. viro → 1. dat. sing. 2. abl. sing. from vir

- a vim
- b viris
- c viros
- d virum
- e viribus
- f virorum
- g vi
- h viri
- i virium
- j vires

**2** Write out the declensions of the following words which decline like *senex*. Remember to check the genitive.

e.g. apis (*bee*)

	Singular	Plural
nom. →	apis	apes
voc. →	apis	apes
acc. →	apem	apes
gen. →	apis	apum
dat. →	api	apibus
abl. →	ape	apibus

- a frater (*brother*)
- b iuvenis (*young man*)
- c mater (*mother*)
- d canis (*dog*)
- e pater (*father*)
- f sedes (*seat*)
- g accipiter (*hawk*)
- h mensis (*month*)
- i volucris (*bird*)
- j vates (*prophet*)

**A** Nominatives and vocatives are alike except in the singular of the second declension (see Units 15 and 16).

### **B** The subject

- The **nominative case** is the name of a noun and is used when that noun is the **subject** of a sentence. If the verb of a sentence is **active** (see Unit 2 **B**), the **subject** is the person or thing performing the action of the verb.

**e.g.** *mus elephantum terret* → *the mouse frightens the elephant*. The mouse is doing the frightening so it is the **subject**.

- If the verb of the sentence is **passive** (see Units 2 **B**, 45 and 46), the **subject** is the person or thing experiencing the action of the verb.

**e.g.** *mus ab elephanto terretur* → *the mouse is frightened by the elephant*. The mouse is now experiencing the fright so it is the **subject**.

- In English we usually start our sentences with the subject but in Latin the subject can come anywhere in a **sentence** or **clause** (see Introduction).

**e.g.** *legiones Gallos supervaerunt* → *the legions have overcome the Gauls*  
*Caesaerem Brutus necavit* → *Brutus killed Caesar*  
*plaustrum trahunt boves* → *the oxen drag the plough*

### **C** The complement

The **nominative** is also used when one noun is the **complement** of another. In other words, the subject of the sentence is referred to by another noun.

**e.g.** *Caesar electus est imperator* → *Caesar has been chosen as general*. The noun **imperator** (*general*) refers to the subject (*Caesar*) and so is the **complement** and is in the **nominative**.

### **D** The vocative case

The **vocative case** is used when addressing someone or something.

**e.g.** *ave Caesar!* → *hail Caesar!*  
*salvete filii* → *hello sons*  
*salve sol* → *hello sun*

Examples of second declension vocatives are:

- *et tu Brute?* → *you too Brutus?* (Julius Caesar's dying words in Latin)
- *salve Valeri* → *hello Valerius*
- *o fili* → *o son*

**E** Technically, the nominative case is known as the **cases rectus** but you will probably never meet this term. However, you will probably meet the term **oblique cases** which is another way of referring to all cases apart from the nominative.

**1 Identify only the subjects in the following English sentences.**

*e.g.* Five red foxes ran through the farmyard → foxes

- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a This box is not to be opened.      | f Marius was a great general.        |
| b Do the pirates have a flag?        | g Diamonds are a girl's best friend. |
| c We have been released.             | h How heavy are those ostriches?     |
| d It is finished.                    | i Are you going out?                 |
| e Where are the onions and cabbages? | j The dish ran away with the spoon.  |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. The nominatives are used for the subjects. Remember that there is no word for 'the' in Latin so you will have to supply it if it helps the sense.**

*e.g.* canes saliebant → *the dogs were leaping*

- a pedites ambulaverunt sed legatus equitavit.
- b grues avolaverant.
- c non ridet imperator.
- d lepus non vicit.
- e gladiatores sumus.
- f Cassius dormit.
- g miles et nauta bibebant.
- h pontifex dixit et plebs parebit.
- i magister docebat sed discipuli non audiebant.
- j Hercules diu laborabat

**3 Translate the following sentences in which the nominative is used both for the subject and the complement.**

*e.g.* senatores erant proditores → *the senators were traitors*

- |                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a Merlinus erat magus.   | f raptores captivi sunt.         |
| b pauper erit princeps.  | g oratores sunt mendaces.        |
| c canis est pestis.      | h Romani erant victores.         |
| d Pheidias erat artifex. | i praetoriani erunt percussores. |
| e templa sunt aedificia. | j Brutus fuerat consul.          |

**4 Translate these sentences which have a mixture of nominatives and vocatives.**

*e.g.* non manebimus, pueri → *we shall not wait, boys*

- |                                 |                                       |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a domine, hospites discedunt.   | f Valeri, Iulius et Tiberius currunt. |
| b salvete agricolae!            | g ave fili.                           |
| c Valeria, Tite, iuvenis cadit. | h pater, ver appropinquat.            |
| d centurio, captivi effugerunt. | i ubi es, Marce?                      |
| e hostes adveniunt o milites!   | j Fortuna, dea es.                    |

Nouns in the accusative belong to one of the following categories.

### A The direct object

- The direct object, usually just called the object, is the noun which experiences or suffers the action of the verb when the verb is **active** (see Unit 2 **B**) and **transitive** (see Unit 2 **G**). When the verb is passive there is no object. The object is in the accusative case.

e.g. *mus elephantum terret* → *the mouse frightens the elephant*. The elephant suffers the fright so it is the object.

- In English we usually put the object after the verb but in Latin the object can come anywhere in a sentence or clause (see Introduction).

e.g. *anserem vulpes spectat* → *the fox is watching the goose*  
*corvus caseum gustat* → *the crow is tasting the cheese*  
*senator salutavit amicum* → *the senator greeted his friend*

- Some verbs, usually of making, calling and teaching, take two accusatives, one of the person and another of the thing, e.g. *puerum Latinam doceo* → *I am teaching the boy Latin*.  
*Tarquinium regem fecerunt* → *they made Tarquin king*.

### B Extent of time or space

- For the accusative expressing duration of time see Unit 31 **B**.
- To express age, e.g. *puer decem annos natus* → *a ten-year-old boy* (i.e. born for ten years).
- To express extent of space, e.g. *tria mila ambulabamus* → *we walked for three miles*, *draco multa milia aberat* → *the dragon was many miles away*, *rupes est centum pedes alta* → *the crag is a hundred feet high*.

### C Direction towards

The accusative can mean motion towards, e.g. *Romam* → *to Rome*. (For more details and the locative case, see Unit 31 **A**).

**D** The accusative is used after certain prepositions, e.g. *ad curiam* → *to the senate house*. (See Unit 32 for a detailed account of prepositions).

### E Internal accusative

This is also called the accusative of respect and the adverbial accusative. It is not used as the object of a verb, often refers to part of the body and is usually poetic, e.g. *saucius artus* → *wounded in (respect of) his limbs*.

### F Accusative of exclamation

This expresses amazement, disbelief, outrage or distress, often with an adjective (see Units 33 and 34), e.g. *o fortunatam Romam* (Cicero) → *o fortunate Rome* and *me miserum!* → *o wretched me!*



**1 Identify the objects in the following sentences.**

e.g. *we all like figs* → *figs*

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| a Asterix is chasing his dog.           | f Why do flies eat dung?            |
| b How many boxes have you filled?       | g When will Hadrian visit the wall? |
| c Wars cause misery.                    | h I cannot see the signal.          |
| d The wind helps boats.                 | i We are awaiting our orders.       |
| e The otters are watching their mother. | j The doctor has cured the disease. |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English.**

e.g. *ranae muscas capiebant* → *the frogs were catching flies*

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| a venatores clamores audiverunt.  | g milites Claudium imperatorem fecerunt. |
| b magistri pueros docebant.       | h actorem puellae plauserunt.            |
| c druides taurum sacrificaverunt. | i avarus nummos amat.                    |
| d domine, servi panem portant.    | j navis scopulum percussit.              |
| e nuces sciuri celabant.          |  |
| f fabri murum aedificant.         |  |

**3 Translate the following simple sentences into Latin.**

e.g. *the priests were leading the procession* → *sacerdotes pompam ducebant*

- a The senator is calling the allies.  
b The river has flooded the fields.  
c Hercules attacked the hydra.  
d The boys love Amelia.  
e The Gauls fear the Romans.  
f The guards have closed the gates.  
g The dogs are watching the shepherd.  
h The farmer has freed the birds.  
i They are hiding the gold.  
j Cats do not like water.

**4 Translate these sentences which contain accusatives of respect, accusatives of extent and accusatives of exclamation. The adjectives are easy to find in a dictionary.**

e.g. *deus oculos nitidus est* → *the god is shining in his eyes* (i.e. his eyes are shining)

- |                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a o incredibilem foeditatem. | f saucius eram manus.            |
| b corpus valeo.              | g lacus erat centum pedes altus. |
| c viginti gradus ambulavit.  | h equus crurem claudicat.        |
| d o mirabilem fortitudinem.  | i o gloriam inconstantem.        |
| e miles sex pedes altus est. | j nudus erat artus.              |

A good general rule is that the genitive is used for nouns which in English have the word 'of' before them. It has a wide variety of uses in Latin. Do not be put off by the official names. All the uses are straightforward.

### A Possessive genitive

- This is used as in English to express possession, e.g. *liber puellae* → *the girl's book* (i.e. the book of the girl) or *equus regis* → *the king's horse*.
- As in English this can be used to express association as well as ownership. This is sometimes called the **subjective genitive**, e.g. *libri Ovidii* → *the works of Ovid* (i.e. books written by Ovid), *coniuratio Catilinae* → *the conspiracy of Catiline* or *amor matris* → *the love of a mother* (i.e. the love felt by a mother).

### B Attributive genitive

This is used as in English to describe the content or material of which something consists, e.g. *acervus frumenti* → *a pile of corn* or *vincula ferri* → *shackles of iron*.

### C Appositional genitive or genitive of definition

This is used with another noun which it defines further, e.g. *ars scribendi* → *the art of writing* (for the verbal noun *scribendi* see gerund Unit 50 A), *hoc nomen regis* → *this title (of) king* or *ipsum verbum veneni* → *the very word (of) poison*.

### D Genitive of characteristic

This is used where in English the characteristic, nature or duty of something is expressed, e.g. *est custodis curare portas* → *it is (the duty) of a guard to look after the gates*; *est viri pii deos colere* → *it is (the nature) of a pious man to worship the gods*.

### E Genitive of quality, description

This is used as in English with an adjective or number to express a quality of person or thing, as well as size, number and age, e.g. *vir egregiae virtutis* → *a man of outstanding valour*; *fossa viginti pedum* → *a ditch of twenty feet*; *natio quinque tribuum* → *a nation of five tribes*; *puer annorum septem* → *a boy of seven years*.

### F Objective genitive

This is used with nouns and adjectives (especially those ending in -ax) which contain a strong verbal sense, e.g. *odium belli* → *a hatred of war* and *amor matris* → *the love of a mother* (i.e. felt for a mother), *laudem tuam nostri amamus* → *we like your praise of us* (see also Unit 39 A for the genitive pronoun *nostri*) and *mens ingenii capax* → *a mind capable of genius*.

**1** Translate the following sentences into English. There is a mixture of types of genitive in them.

**e.g.** tecta urbis video → *I see the roofs of the city*

- |   |  |   |   |
|---|--|---|---|
| a | puer versus Vergilii recitat.          | l | cives virum honestatis probant.           |
| b | disco artem equitandi.                 | m | Hannibal visum oculi amisit.              |
| c | ianuam domus numquam aperio.           | n | aquae fluminis leniter fluebant.          |
| d | pastor filiam regis amat.              | o | corona gemmarum fulsit.                   |
| e | voces liberorum audivistis.            | p | est ducis urbem curare.                   |
| f | capillos capitis senis tonsor numerat. | q | elephantī massas saxorum portant.         |
| g | catervam militum timemus.              | r | vulnera militum non videmus.              |
| h | est medici aegrotos sanare.            | s | exploratores culmina montium aspectabant. |
| i | minae hostium liberos terrebant.       | t | linguam Romanorum discebant.              |
| j | acervi stercoris viam claudunt.        |   |   |
| k | sonitus tonitrus ancillae audiverunt.  |   |   |

**2** Translate the following sentences into Latin. Different types of genitive are included among them.

**e.g.** *The birds' voices delighted the listeners* → voces avium auditores delectaverunt

- a The burdens press the donkeys' backs.
- b Cassius is a man capable of cruelty.
- c The men of the town will not fight.
- d The slaves are washing the master's togas.
- e We love the waves of the sea.
- f The love of war destroys humanity.
- g They did not see the light of the fire.
- h I do not like the dog's breath.
- i The wisdom of the queen has saved the ship.
- j I have a weight of silver.
- k It is a sailor's job to navigate.
- l The prize of valour is glory.
- m You (s.) will like the poet's house.
- n Love of money is the root of evil.
- o We have found the pile of eggs.
- p The love of a mother sustains children.
- q The Romans did not like the title king.
- r We are seeking the wizard's treasure.
- s Brutus' mother was sleeping.
- t I know a man of a hundred years.

### G Partitive genitive or genitive of the whole

- This is used when a part of a larger amount or number is referred to.

e.g. *pars villae* → *part of the estate*  
*partem thesauri celavit* → *he hid part of the treasure*  
*multi militum* → *many of the soldiers*  
*complures nostrum* → *several of us* (see also Unit 39 A on the genitive pronoun *nostrum*)

- The partitive genitive is often found with the following neuter pronouns and adjectives of quantity in a way not used in English. We generally leave out the 'of'.

e.g. *plus vini* → *more (of) wine* (see also Unit 35 D on *plus* → *more*)  
*aliquid novi* → *some (of) news*      *tantum doloris* → *so much (of) grief*  
*quid novi?* → *what (of) news?*      *nihil virium* → *no strength (nothing of strength)*  
*multum sanguinis* → *much (of) blood*      *quantum aquae?* → *how much (of) water?*  
*satis clamorum* → *enough (of) shouting*      *minus papyri* → *less (of) paper*  
*nimis violentiae* → *too much (of) violence*      *hoc temporis* → *at this (point in/of) time*  
*parum cibi* → *not enough (of) food*      *quicquam panis* → *any (of) bread*

- The partitive genitive *gentium* (of *nations*) and *terrarum* (of *countries*) is used in questions like *ubi gentium sum?* → *where in the world am I?* (where of the nations? in Latin).

### H After verbs and adjectives

Some verbs and adjectives are followed by a genitive, as in English. A dictionary entry will tell you whether this happens for a particular verb or adjective. (For impersonal verbs which take the genitive see Unit 56 D). It generally occurs after:

- Verbs and adjectives of condemning, accusing, acquitting or convicting, e.g. *maiestatis convictus est* → *he was convicted of treason*.
- Verbs and adjectives of want or fullness, e.g. *plenus aquae* → *full of water* and *armorum indiget* → *he is in need of weapons*. The deponent verb *potior* → *take possession of* (see Unit 55) is of this type.
- Verbs and adjectives of remembering, forgetting or reminding, e.g. *periculi memor* → *mindful of the danger* or *verborum oblitus sum* → *I forgot the words*.
- Verbs of valuing, buying and selling. The genitive is usually an adjective or pronoun and is called the *genitive of value*. The commonest examples are *magni*, *parvi*, *plurimi*, *minimi*, *tanti*,

quanti, pluris and minoris, e.g. *divitias parvi aestimat* → *he values riches (of) little*, *canem magni pretii emit* → *he bought the dog for a great price (of a great price in Latin)*, *felem minoris emit* → *he bought the cat for less (of less in Latin)*.

**1** Translate the following sentences into English. There is a mixture of types of genitive in them.

e.g. *tantum felicitatis vidisti* → *you have seen so much happiness*

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| a agricola memor belli est.          | j ascendatores parum funium habuerunt. |
| b cives dignitatem magni aestimant.  | k minus proelii imperator vidit.       |
| c fossores aliquid auri invenerunt.  | l puellae aliquid panis portabant.     |
| d ubi terrarum eramus?               | m tantum casei vulpes cepit.           |
| e quanti pretii domum emisti?        | n partem muri delevimus.               |
| f pauperes calceorum indigebant.     | o quicquam pecuniae habes?             |
| g fur honestatem parvi aestimat.     | p liberi nimis aquae biberunt.         |
| h multum veneni senator devoraverat. | q multi gladiatorum pugnabant.         |
| i satis onerum portat.               | r complures captivorum aegrotant.      |
|                                      | s pars pompae constitit.               |
|                                      | t naves magni pretii emerunt.          |

**2** Translate the following sentences into Latin. There is a mixture of types of genitive in them.

e.g. *Caesar had too much glory* → *Caesar nimis gloriae habebat*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a We desire enough houses.                       | l He bought the farm for a small price.       |
| b The horses are dragging too much wood.         | m The shepherd is guarding part of the flock. |
| c Do you (s.) have any news?                     | n Part of the battle line was approaching.    |
| d The lake is full of fish.                      | o The boy is carrying more fruit.             |
| e The crow has taken some grain.                 | p We have not enough salt.                    |
| f He is mindful of the danger.                   | q How much of the story do they know?         |
| g Peace makes much wealth.                       | r We saved part of the tree.                  |
| h Many of the children were playing.             | s The general values cowards little.          |
| i I have seen too much weeping.                  |   |
| j We are in need of water.                       |   |
| k At this point in time the guards are sleeping. |   |

The dative case has a wide variety of uses. It is generally used for nouns which in English have 'to' or 'for' before them.

### A Dative of indirect object

- In Latin (as in English), when transitive verbs of giving, sending, saying, telling, promising or showing etc. take a direct object in the accusative (Unit 24 **A**), the person (or thing) to whom the object is given, shown or sent etc. is the indirect object. In Latin the indirect object is in the dative, e.g. *epistulam imperatori misisti* → *you sent a letter to the emperor*. In English we do not always need the 'to', e.g. *dic mihi causas* → *tell me the reasons*.
- Some verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin and so, instead of taking a direct object in the accusative, they take the dative. The most common are the verbs below. Most of them contain the idea of being favourable to someone (or the opposite).

*credo -ere credidi creditum* → *believe*

*desum deesse defui* → *fail in one's duty, be lacking*

*faveo -ere favi fautum* → *support*

*fido -ere fisus sum* (semi-deponent: see Unit 55) → *trust* (and its compounds like *diffido* → *mistrust*)

*ignosco -ere ignovi ignotum* → *forgive*

*impero -are -avi -atum* → *order*

*indulgeo -ere indulsi* → *indulge*

*intersum interesse interfui* → *be among*

*invideo -ere invidi in visum* → *envy*

*irascor irasci iratus sum* → *be angry with* (deponent: see Unit 55)

*minor -ari -atus sum* → *threaten* (deponent: see Unit 55)

*noceo -ere -ui -itum* → *harm*

*nubo -ere nupsi nuptum* → *marry a man* (only with a woman as the subject)

*obsum obesse obfui* → *be a hindrance to* (cf. *obviam ire* + dative → *meet*)

*parco -ere peperci parsum* → *spare*

*pareo -ere -ui -itum* → *obey*

*placeo -ere -ui -itum* → *please*

*praesum praeesse praefui* → *be in command of*

*prosum proesse profui* → *be of benefit to*

*resisto -ere restiti* → *resist*

*servio -ire -ivi -itum* → *serve, be a slave to*

*studeo -ere -ui* → *study, be keen on*

*suadeo -ere suasi suasum* → *advise* (and the compound *persuadeo* → *persuade*)

*subvenio -ire subveni subventum* → *come to help*

*supersum superesse superfui* → *survive*

For impersonal verbs with the dative, see Unit 56 **C**.

- It can be used in the same way with adjectives which express likeness, help, proximity, trust etc, e.g. *fidelis amico erat* → *he was faithful to his friend*; *filia simillima matri est* → *the daughter is very like her mother*; *Marcus par fratri est* → *Marcus is like his brother*.

Some of these adjectives can also take the genitive (see Unit 26 **H**).

## 1 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *agricolae plaustrum demonstravimus* → *we have shown the farmer the wagon*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a liberis fabulam narras.                  | k candidato non favemus.                |
| b auxilium sociis misimus.                 | l praestigiatore hospitibus placuerunt. |
| c divisor suffragatoribus non persuadebit. | m cives sacerdotibus fidunt.            |
| d dona matronis promisi.                   | n Romanis barbari diu resistebant.      |
| e poetae civibus recitabant.               | o Vitellia par matri erat.              |
| f oratori senatores non crediderunt.       | p custodes captivis deerant.            |
| g pauperes divitibus non invident.         | q servis domini imperaverunt.           |
| h sorores fratribus subveniebant.          | r Sulla inimicis nocuit.                |
| i Caesar inimicis pepercit.                | s militibus non serviemus.              |
| j Arminius Germanis praeerat.              | t magister discipulis libros dedit.     |

## 2 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

**e.g.** *I shall send corn to the colonists* → *frumentum colonis mittam*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a You (s.) used to trust the queen.                | k He is supporting his mother.                   |
| b The hunters were studying the stag's footprints. | l The foxes will not harm the chickens.          |
| c The runners mistrust the ice.                    | m The lady sent the rings to her daughters.      |
| d The women will be among the spectators.          | n The priests gave sacrifices to the gods.       |
| e You (pl.) have not persuaded the allies.         | o The judge will not forgive the assassin.       |
| f I envy the victors.                              | p Portia has married Brutus.                     |
| g The cowards will not come to help the boys.      | q The young men believed the messenger.          |
| h The master indulges the slaves.                  | r Cats do not trust dogs.                        |
| i The sheep are a hindrance to the carts.          | s The dam will resist the waves.                 |
| j The orders do not please the soldiers.           | t The witnesses are telling the judge the truth. |

**B Dative of advantage and disadvantage**

The person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage something is done is in the dative, e.g. *hoc nobis facimus* → *we are doing this for ourselves* (for *hoc* see Unit 40 **C**), *Brutus Caesari vitam abstulit* → *Brutus stole the life from Caesar*.

**C Dative of reference and ethic dative**

- The dative of reference indicates the person who is interested or involved in the action. It is often best translated by phrases such as *in the eyes of x*, *in x's judgement* or *as far as x is concerned* etc., e.g. *Caesar Cassio regnare cupit* → *in Cassio's eyes Caesar wants to be a king*.
- The so-called **ethic dative** of a **personal pronoun** (see Unit 39 **A**) is used to mark interest or call attention in familiar conversation, e.g. *haec vobis mox fecit* → *he soon did this, mind you*.

**D** The dative of possession is used with the verb *to be* to indicate ownership, e.g. *sunt mihi quinque equi* → *I have five horses* (literally: *there are five horses for me*).

**E** The dative of agent refers to the person or thing by whose agency something must be done and is used with the **gerundive** (see Unit 51 **B**), e.g. *laborandum est mihi* → *I must work* (literally: *work must be done by me*).

**F** The dative of purpose expresses the intended purpose for which something is done, e.g. *Caesar locum proelio delegit* → *Caesar chose a site for the battle*.

**G Predicative dative**

- The **predicative dative** is not easily translatable into English. It is a specialized use of the dative, always accompanied by a dative of reference (or dative of advantage or dative of disadvantage). The verb most usually found in these expressions is *to be*, although other verbs do occur.

The best way to translate it is to treat it as 'a source of', e.g. *Britanni auxilio erant Gallis* → *the Britons were a source of help to the Gauls* (literally: *the Britons were for a help to the Gauls*). The Gauls (*Gallis*) are in the dative of advantage.

- Other common examples apart from *auxilio esse* are:

*beneficio esse* → *to be a benefit to*

*bono esse* → *to be a source of good to*, e.g. *cui bono?* → *for whom is it good?* (who benefits?)

*curae esse* → *to be a source of concern to*

*decori esse* → *to be a source of glory to*

*dedecori esse* → *to be a disgrace to*

*exemplo esse* → *to be an example to*

*honori esse* → *to be an honour to*

*laudi esse* → *to be a credit to*

*odio esse* → *to be a source of hatred to*

*oneri esse* → *to be a burden to*  
*saluti esse* → *to be a salvation to*

*periculo esse* → *to be a danger to*

*usui esse* → *to be of use to*

*subsidio esse* → *to be a support to*



**1 Translate the following into English. They contain datives of advantage and disadvantage.**

**e.g.** servi stolas matronis laverunt → *the slaves washed the dresses for the ladies*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a pueri carbonem fabris colligebant.       | f insidias paravistis hostibus.        |
| b pacem posteritati faciemus.              | g panem portat uxori.                  |
| c Romani thermas aedificaverunt incolis.   | h Brutus Caesarem reipublicae necavit. |
| d elephanti stipites traxerunt silvicolis. | i hostes agros agricolis vastaverunt.  |
| e pater equos filiabus emit.               | j puella mala sorori carpsit.          |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** est magnus murus Seribus → *the Chinese have a great wall*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a nomen peregrino fuit Ulysses.               | g est nix culminibus montium.            |
| b sunt elephanti Carthaginiensibus.           | h exploratores locum castris invenerunt. |
| c gemmas aviae dono misi.                     | i sunt Graecis centum naves.             |
| d civibus erat dux fortis.                    | j operarii stadium certamini verrebant   |
| e pueri locum pugnae delegerunt.              |  |
| f artifices pulchritudini aedificium petivit. |  |

**3 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** Hector erat decori Troianis → *Hector was a source of glory to the Trojans*

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| a naves erant beneficio Carthaginiensibus. | f maritus erit subsidio uxori.        |
| b Brutus honori erat Romanis.              | g pedicae periculo sunt ursis.        |
| c captivi sunt oneri militibus.            | h flumen saluti fuit viatoribus.      |
| d Milo erat odio Clodio.                   | i filius curae erat matri.            |
| e Cloelia est exemplo puellis.             | j Catilina dedecori erat senatoribus. |

**4 Translate the following sentences into Latin. Use a mixture of types of dative.**

**e.g.** *we have been an example to the children* → *exemplo liberis fuimus*

- We are carrying the chickens for a joke.
- The chieftains were a burden to the citizens.
- As far as the old man is concerned we are sleeping.
- The ovens are of use to the bakers.
- The Romans built an amphitheatre for spectacles.
- The charioteer has twenty horses.
- In the voters' judgement the candidate was not listening.
- The thieves took the gold from the miser.
- The rioters have clubs.
- You (s.) will remove the obstacles for the procession.

The ablative case is the one with the widest range of meanings in Latin. Broadly speaking, it corresponds to nouns in English which have 'by', 'with' or 'from' before them.

**A** The ablative of separation is used with the adverb *procul* (far away) and verbs and adjectives which express the idea of keeping away from something, lacking something or being free of something.

*e.g.* *agricola leones gregibus abegit* → the farmer drove the lions away from his flocks  
*procul negotio, ad villam ambulat* → far from business, he is walking to the estate  
*procul patria fugit* → he fled far from his fatherland

**B** The ablative of origin is used to indicate descent or origin, e.g. *Aeneas dea natus est* → Aeneas was born of (from) a goddess.

**C** The ablative of comparison is used to show the point of comparison after comparative adjectives and adverbs instead of *quam* → *than* + nominative or accusative (see Unit 35), e.g. *cameleopardus elephanto altior est* → the giraffe is taller than the elephant.

**D** The ablative of association is used with verbs and adjectives with the sense of plenty etc., e.g. *insula materia abundat* → the island abounds with timber.

**E** The ablative of respect is used like the accusative of respect (see Unit 24 **E**) and means 'in respect of'. It is normally translated with the word 'in' before it. The adjective *dignus* → *worthy* regularly takes this kind of ablative.

*e.g.* *Philoctetes pede vulneratus est* → Philoctetes has been wounded in the foot  
*miles nautam viribus superat* → the soldier surpasses the sailor in strength  
*Augustus certe laude dignus erat* → Augustus was certainly worthy of praise

**F** The ablative of quality or description is used with an adjective to describe something, e.g. *praestanti forma femina* → a woman of outstanding beauty.

**G** The ablative of manner or of attendant circumstances expresses the way or the circumstances in which something happens or is done.

*e.g.* *draco lento gradu appropinquavit* → the dragon approached with slow step  
*silentio ambulabat* → he was walking in silence  
*per vias clamoribus ambulabat* → he was walking through the streets amid the shouting

**H** For the ablative absolute construction see Unit 70.

**I** For the ablative after prepositions see Unit 32.

**J** For the ablative of time when and time within which see Unit 31 **B**.

**K** For the ablative with impersonal verbs see Unit 56.

**1 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain ablatives of separation.**

**e.g.** *fugitivi proelio fugerunt* → *the fugitives fled far from the battle*

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| a cives servitutine liberabimus.           | f milites hostes urbe arcent.         |
| b raptore corporibus arma spoliaverunt.    | g philosophus vino semper abstinebat. |
| c senatores proditore honores privaverunt. | h puellae vespas crepundiis pellunt.  |
| d obsides cibo et aqua carent.             | i reum crimine solvo.                 |
| e pugil pugnat nudus vestimentis.          | j trabibus et clavis egemus.          |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain ablatives of origin and association.**

**e.g.** *pater filium equo donavit* → *the father presented his son with a horse*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a pecunia agricolae mercatores locupletaverunt. | g promus hospites vino implevit.       |
| b senatus cives pane praeiuit.                  | h olim metallum argento abundabat.     |
| c fluvius rivis natus est.                      | i magus avaritiam regis auro explevit. |
| d ancillae urnas aqua implebunt.                | j Mars geminis feminam gravidavit.     |
| e legati consules corona donaverunt.            |  |
| f Romulus deo natus est.                        |  |

**3 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain ablatives of respect, quality, manner and circumstance.**

**e.g.** *sonitibus tonitrus dormiebas* → *you slept through the noises of thunder*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a navem nauta tempestate gubernat.       | f latrones fraude pecuniam comparabant. |
| b Caesar tergo saucius fuit.             | g canis pede claudicabat.               |
| c anseres non silentio volant.           | h avarus avaritia poetam superat.       |
| d ursi homines celeritate oppugnaverunt. | i Cassius est vir praestanti dignitate. |
| e ignavi genibus tremuerunt.             | j liberi hilaritate ludebant.           |

**4 Translate the following sentences into Latin. They contain a mixture of types of ablative.**

**e.g.** *the scouts were in need of light* → *exploratores luce indigebant*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a We shall not drive the exiles from the land. | g We cross the river in fear.              |
| b Achilles was born of a goddess.              | h You (pl.) have filled the vat with milk. |
| c The desert lacks water.                      | i The victors will refrain from violence.  |
| d In war fathers bury sons.                    | j Marcus has hit Titus in the head.        |
| e The farm abounds in cattle.                  |  |
| f Horatius is worthy of honour.                |  |

**L** The ablative of the agent is used after passive verbs with the preposition *ab/a* to indicate the person (agent) by whom something is done (see Units 45 and 46), e.g. *Caesar a Bruto necatus est* → *Caesar was slain by Brutus*.

**M** The ablative of instrument or means

- This is used after verbs without a preposition and indicates the thing (instrument) by or with which something is done, e.g. *Brutus Caesarem pugione necavit* → *Brutus killed Caesar with a dagger*.
- It is also used after certain verbs (mostly deponent: see Unit 55) which are transitive in English but intransitive in Latin. The most common are:

*abutor abuti abusus sum* → *use up, exhaust*

*frutor frui fructus sum* → *enjoy*

*fungor fungi functus sum* → *perform*

*utor uti usus sum* → *use*

*vescor vesci* → *feed on*

**N** The ablative of cause is used with adjectives and verbs (especially when describing a mental state) to express the reason for or cause of something, e.g. *servi domino parent formidine poenae* → *the slaves obey their master through fear of punishment*.

**O** The ablative of measure of difference is used to express a degree of difference with comparatives and superlatives. The most common are:

*hoc* → *by this much*

*quo* → *by which*

*nimio* → *by too much*

*quanto* → *by how much*

*paulo* → *by a little*

*aliquanto* → *by a little*

*eo* → *by that much*

*nihilo* → *by nothing*

*dimidio* → *by half*

*tanto* → *by so much*

*multo* → *by much*

**e.g.** *elephantus multo maior quam mus est* → *the elephant is (by) much bigger than the mouse*.

**P** The ablative of price is used with verbs and adjectives of buying and selling, e.g. *equum tribus talentis emit* → *he bought the horse for three talents*.

**NB** *magno* → *at a great price*, *parvo* → *at a small price*, *vili* → *at a cheap price* and *minimo* → *very cheaply*.

**Q** The ablative of place (see also the locative case in Unit 31 **A**) is more common in verse and is used to indicate the place where something happens, e.g. *summo monte castra posuerunt* → *they pitched camp on the top of the mountain*; *terra marique monstrum petivit* → *he searched for the monster on land and sea*. (For the ending *-que* → *and*, see Unit 37).

**1** Translate the following sentences into English. They contain the ablative of means.

**e.g.** *pistores panem farina faciebant* → *the bakers were making bread with flour*

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| a piscatores pisces retibus capiunt.               | f hortum rosis topiarii ornaverunt.   |
| b discipuli stilis scribebant.                     | g orator cives verbis agitabat.       |
| c senatores Catilinam contumeliosi exprobraverunt. | h securibus libertatem defendemus.    |
| d pueri aleis ludebant.                            | i casas facibus incenderunt.          |
| e boves virgis bubulci impellunt.                  | j victimam sacerdos cultro percussit. |

**2** Translate the following sentences into English. They contain ablatives of cause and measure of difference.

**e.g.** *servitudinis causa gemebant* → *they groaned by reason of their slavery*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a portam terrore tenebrarum non aperit.  | f serpens longior quam vermis viginti pedibus est. |
| b celeritate venti lente ambulabant.     | g pacis amore arma deposuerunt.                    |
| c Cassius nihilo melior quam Brutus est. | h canes herbam amant multo minus quam asini.       |
| d expectatione latronum aurum celavi.    | i quanto maior est bufo quam rana?                 |
| e liberi gaudio saliant.                 | j odio regum Romani Tarquinium expulerunt.         |

**3** Translate the following sentences into English. They contain ablatives of place and price.

**e.g.** *arietem dumis invenit* → *he found the ram in the thorn bushes*

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| a villam emi centum talentis.     | g vaccam quinque fabis vendidit.        |
| b navis aequore navigat.          | h legiones urbibus hibernabunt.         |
| c sicarius horto corpus celavit.  | i luscinia cacumine arboris canebat.    |
| d libros Tarquinius auro emit.    | j victoriam sanguine et ferro confecit. |
| e amici thermis conveniunt.       |   |
| f equi viginti talentis constant. |   |

**A Locative**

The **locative** is the remnant of a case which once existed independently in Latin. It is used to express location and is *never* accompanied by a preposition.

- The names of cities, towns and small islands have a **locative** form. The locative endings for the different declensions follow. You will see that they look like the genitives or ablatives of the same noun. Remember that in Latin some place names exist in the plural. We do not find place names in the fourth and fifth declensions.

1st declension singular	Roma → Rome	<b>Romae</b> → at Rome
1st declension plural	Athenae → Athens	<b>Athenis</b> → at Athens
2nd declension singular	Corinthus → Corinth	<b>Corinthis</b> → at Corinth
2nd declension plural	Philippi → Philippi	<b>Philippis</b> → at Philippi
3rd declension singular	Carthago → Carthage	<b>Carthagini</b> → at Carthage
3rd declension plural	Gades → Cadiz	<b>Gadibus</b> → at Cadiz

- Direction towards a place is expressed in the **accusative**, e.g. *Romam iter facimus* → *we are making a journey to Rome*.
- Direction away from a place is expressed by the **ablative**, e.g. *Roma discessit* → *he departed from Rome*.
- The nouns *domus* -us f. → *house*, *rus* *rus* n. → *countryside*, *bellum* -i n. → *war*, *humus* -i f. → *ground* and *militia* -ae f. → *military service* also have special locative forms:

<b>domi</b> → at home	<b>rus</b> → to the countryside
<b>domum</b> → homewards	<b>ruri</b> → in the countryside
<b>domo</b> → from home	<b>humi</b> → on the ground
<b>belli</b> → at war	<b>militiae</b> → on military service

**B Expressions of time**

- The **accusative** is used to express how long something takes to happen, e.g. *multos annos terram errabat* → *he wandered the land for many years*. Notice that the accusative *terram* is the direct object of the verb, e.g. *totam noctem vigilabant* → *they stayed awake for the whole night*.
- The **ablative** is used to express the time when something happens, e.g. *tertio die ad oppidum pervenerunt* → *they arrived at the town on the third day*; *hieme ursi in speluncis dormiunt* → *in winter the bears sleep in caves*; *vesperi cantamus* → *in the evening we sing*.
- The **ablative** is also used to express time within which something happens, e.g. *paucis diebus pueri advenient* → *the boys will arrive in (within) a few days*.

**1 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** heri cenabam domi Caesaris → *yesterday I was dining at Caesar's house*

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| a aula episcopi Antiochiae erat.    | f senex humi dormiebat.                  |
| b domi Bruti coniurati convenerunt. | g vulpes et lepores ruri ludunt.         |
| c Londinii manebo tres dies.        | h classem exspectamus Brundisii.         |
| d Claudius Romae habitabat.         | i finis terrae Gadibus est.              |
| e Romani Veiis castra posuerunt.    | j Plato et Aristoteles Athenis docebant. |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** Rhodon peregrinatores iter facient → *the pilgrims will journey to Rhodes*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a cras rus ambulabimus.                | g aestate liberos Massiliam semper mittimus. |
| b domum pueri terrore festinabant.     | h domo nuntius cucurrit.                     |
| c Sicila mox discedemus.               | i Romani non semper belli vicerunt.          |
| d Athenis legati Spartam venerunt.     | j Tyrum et Sidonem naves rex misit.          |
| e Alexandria medicus effugit.          |  |
| f Carthaginem mercatores navigaverunt. |  |

**3 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** decem annos captivus erat → *he was a prisoner for ten years*

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| a quattuor diebus cameli advenient.   | e septem dies iuvenes pontem custodient. |
| b quinque annos fundum colebant.      | f mane agricola agrum arat.              |
| c tertio anno patrimonium exceperunt. | g novem mensibus parentes erimus.        |
| d hieme arbores frondes non habent.   | h centum annis phoenix surget.           |
|                                       | i vesperi caelum rubescit.               |
|                                       | j anseres sex noctes clamabant.          |

**4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** *In the morning you (s.) will milk the cows* → mane vaccas mulgebis

- I have left the gift at home.
- The fishermen drifted for eight days.
- Within five days the pilgrims came to Delphi.
- You (pl.) will wait for father in Paris.
- In winter the philosopher lives at Athens.
- Tomorrow the singer will come from Corinth.
- We shall not depart from London in the evening.
- Within six months the craftsmen will have finished the house.
- The tortoise lived for a hundred years.
- The ships carried the grain to Ostia.

A preposition is a word which denotes the relationship (usually spatial) between one noun and another. In Latin most prepositions are followed by (govern) either the **accusative** case or the **ablative** case, except *in*, *sub*, *super* and *subter* which can take either, depending on whether there is movement involved (accusative) or not (ablative).

**A** Prepositions governing (followed by) the **accusative** case are:

ad → to, at	ob → in the way of, on account of
adversus / adversum → opposite, towards, against	penes → in the power of
ante → before	per → through
apud → among, near, at the house of	pone → behind
circum → around	post → after, behind
circa / circiter → about	praeter → beside, except, past
cis / citra → on this side of	prope → near
clam → unknown to	propter → on account of, near
contra → against	secundum → according to, next to, along
erga → towards	sub → up to
extra → outside	subter → close up to
in → into, onto, against	super → over
infra → below	supra → above
inter → amongst, between	trans → across
intra → within	ultra → beyond
iuxta → next to	versus / versum → towards

**B** Prepositions governing (followed by) the **ablative** case are:

a (ab before a vowel or h) → by, from	in → in or on
absque → without	palam → in the sight of
coram → in the presence of	prae → before, in front of
cum → with, in the company of	pro → before, on behalf of, for
de → from, down from, concerning	sine → without
e (ex before a vowel or h) → out of, from	sub → under
	subter → underneath
	super → upon
	tenus → as far as, reaching

**C** In the case of *gratia* → *sake* and *causa* → *reason*, the **ablative** of the noun has almost come to be used as a preposition which takes the genitive.

**e.g.** *ars gratia artis* → *art for the sake of art*  
*exempli gratia* → *for the sake of example* (abbreviated to e.g.)  
*honoris causa* → *by reason of honour*

**D** Many Latin words have prepositions as prefixes, i.e. the preposition is added to the start of the word. These are called **compound** words. The meaning of the preposition alters the sense of the word accordingly, e.g. *praesideo* → *I sit in front of* (hence president).



**1 Translate the following sentences into English. The prepositions take the accusative.**

**1.2** Hannibal ad portas est → *Hannibal is at the gates*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a pueri ob capros sedent.                         | f equi trans flumen natabant.                   |
| b cervae ad silvas cucurrerunt.                   | g servus poculum pone sedem celavit.            |
| c apud Marcum praestigiatores hospitibus placent. | h Cicero orationes in Marcum Antonium scripsit. |
| d murum circum hortum senex aedificaverat.        | i valles inter montes iacebat.                  |
| e corvi super cacumina arborum volant.            | j duces citra urbem convenerunt.                |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. The prepositions take the ablative.**

**2.2** monstrum sub ponte latebat → *the ogre was hiding under the bridge*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a palam civibus Horatius Etruscis resistebat.    | f avarus aurum sub pavimento sepelivit. |
| b orator prae multitudine stetit.                | g de fundo controversiam habuimus.      |
| c iudex pro reo dixit.                           | h aqua e fonte fluebat.                 |
| d sine comitibus ambulo.                         | i pueri cum puellis in area ludebant.   |
| e Catilinam Cicero coram senatoribus inculpavit. |   |

**3 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain a mixture of prepositions.**

**3.2** trans mare amoris causa natavit → *he swam across the sea because of love*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a panem super mensa pistor posuit.      | e gemmas iuxta coronam ponunt.            |
| b Galli tenus urbe agros vastaverunt.   | f ad tabernam propter pluviam currimus.   |
| c cameli ante meridiem non bibunt.      | g crocodilus subter ripa latet.           |
| d puero osculum dedit palam parentibus. | h potestam gratia pecuniarum petis.       |
|   | i aestate liberi extra cubacula dormient. |

**4 Translate the following into Latin.**

**e.g.** I watched the man through the door → *virum per ianuam spectabam*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a You (s.) will write the poem for honour's sake. | e The animals were asleep except for the geese.    |
| b She rode between the cottages.                  | f We are walking close up to the river bank.       |
| c Unknown to the guards, they opened the gates.   | g The statues are standing in front of the temple. |
| d Tomorrow we shall depart from the woods.        |  |

An adjective describes a noun. Adjectives in Latin are used as in English except that they need not be written before the noun, e.g. *miles gloriosus* → the *boastful* soldier. An adjective can also stand in for a noun, e.g. *boni* → good (men).

**A** When you look up a first and second declension adjective in the dictionary you will find the **nominative singular** of its masculine, feminine and neuter forms, e.g. *bonus bona bonum* → *good*. This is often abbreviated, e.g. *bonus -a -um*.

**B** An adjective agrees with the noun it is describing, i.e. it is in the same **number, gender and case** as that noun so that we can tell exactly which noun it is describing. It is important to know this because in Latin adjectives are not always written next to nouns.

**C** In first and second declension adjectives the **masculine and neuter forms are second declension** while the **feminine forms are first declension**.

- The majority decline like *bonus -a -um* → *good*.

	Singular			Plural		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
nom.	<b>bonus</b>	<b>bona</b>	<b>bonum</b>	<b>boni</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bona</b>
voc.	<b>bone</b>	<b>bona</b>	<b>bonum</b>	<b>boni</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bona</b>
acc.	<b>bonum</b>	<b>bonam</b>	<b>bonum</b>	<b>bonos</b>	<b>bonas</b>	<b>bona</b>
gen.	<b>boni</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>boni</b>	<b>bonorum</b>	<b>bonarum</b>	<b>bonorum</b>
dat.	<b>bono</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bono</b>	<b>bonis</b>	<b>bonis</b>	<b>bonis</b>
abl.	<b>bono</b>	<b>bona</b>	<b>bono</b>	<b>bonis</b>	<b>bonis</b>	<b>bonis</b>

- Some adjectives in these declensions go like the nouns *puer* and *ager* in the masculine (see Unit 16 **A**). Their declension differs from *bonus* only in the **nominative and vocative masculine singular**. They decline like *tener* → *tender*, which keeps an e, or *pulcher* → *beautiful* which loses an e. The adjective *dexter* → *on the right* can decline either like *tener* or *pulcher*, with either *dexteri* or *dextri* as its genitive masculine singular.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
nom.	<b>tener</b>	<b>tenera</b>	<b>tenerum</b>
voc.	<b>tener</b>	<b>tenera</b>	<b>tenerum</b>
acc.	<b>tenerum</b>	<b>teneram</b>	<b>tenerum</b> etc. like <i>bonus</i>
nom.	<b>pulcher</b>	<b>pulchra</b>	<b>pulchrum</b>
voc.	<b>pulcher</b>	<b>pulchra</b>	<b>pulchrum</b>
acc.	<b>pulchrum</b>	<b>pulchram</b>	<b>pulchrum</b> etc. like <i>bonus</i>

- The adjectives *medius* → *middle*, *imus* → *bottom* or *lowest*, *summus* → *top* or *highest*, *primus* → *first* and *ultimus* → *furthest* are used in two ways. First, they follow a noun to express order in both time and space, e.g. *mons summus* → *the highest mountain*, *hora media* → *the middle hour*. Second, they precede a noun to refer to a part of it, e.g. *summus mons* → *the top (part) of the mountain*, *media hora* → *the middle (part) of the hour*.

**1** What number, gender and case are the following phrases? If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

*e.g.* puellis pulchris → 1. dat. f. pl. 2. abl. f. pl.

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| a manum teneram       | f diei festi        |
| b tempestates magnae  | g leonibus magnis   |
| c virginum pulchrarum | h hominem scelestum |
| d deabus benignis     | i maria alta        |
| e agricolae bonos     | j clamore claro     |

**2** Translate the following into English.

*e.g.* ad summum montem ascendemus → *we shall climb to the top of the mountain*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a pulchras gemmas in arca lignea<br>inveni.   | g profugi miseri per terras<br>errabant.     |
| b scelera scelesti boni non probant.          | h dextras manus Gallorum<br>Caesar abscedit. |
| c heri quinque equos albos emi.               | i ad saxa rubra iuvenes<br>pugnabunt.        |
| d noctem atram liberi timent.                 | j navis parva in imo mari<br>iacet.          |
| e ursi villosi in densis silvis hibernant.    |  |
| f nubes opacas supra mare nautae<br>viderunt. |  |

**3** Translate the following into Latin using first and second declension adjectives.

*e.g.* the little ship sails on the blue sea → *navis parva in mari caeruleo navigat*

- a The mischievous ghost lived in the bottom of the well.  
b The great and the good are sometimes cowardly.  
c The angry voters do not like the candidate's dirty toga.  
d The brown bears are walking next to a beautiful river.  
e The wily magician wrote in a secret book.  
f The haughty king neglected the wretched peasants.  
g Dread goddesses will punish the wicked.  
h The ancient tree stood on the top of the hill.  
i The tender chicks are sleeping in the high nest.  
j Tomorrow the tired women will arrive at the first gate.

**4** Write the word for good which agrees in number, gender and case with the following nouns. If there is more than one possible answer give them all.

*e.g.* agricolae → boni or bono

- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| a rebus   | f urbi       |
| b regis   | g imperatore |
| c capitum | h manuum     |
| d cives   | i mare       |
| e domine  | j legionem   |

**A** Adjectives in the third declension decline like nouns of the third declension (Units 17 and 18). Notice particularly that third declension adjectives end in -i in the ablative singular, unless they are standing in for a noun, e.g. compare *puer servatus est ab ingenti nauta* → *the boy was saved by a huge sailor* with *puer servatus est ab ingente* → *the boy was saved by a huge (man)*.

**B** Third declension adjectives which have **one ending** for all genders in the nominative singular decline like *ingens ingentis* → *huge*, as do **present participles** (see Unit 44 **B**). Note that in dictionary entries these adjectives are given with their nominative and genitive singular.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
nom. and voc.	ingens	ingens	ingentes	ingentia
acc.	ingentem	ingens	ingentes or -is	ingentia
gen.	ingentis	ingentis	ingentium	ingentium
dat. and abl.	ingenti	ingenti	ingentibus	ingentibus

**C** Third declension adjectives which have **two endings** in the nominative singular, one for both masculine and feminine and another for the neuter, decline like *fortis -is -e* → *brave, strong*.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
nom. and voc.	fortis	forte	fortes	fortia
acc.	fortem	forte	fortes or fortis	fortia
gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
dat. and abl.	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus

**D** Third declension adjectives with **three endings** in the nominative singular, one for each gender, decline like *acer acris acre* → *keen*.

Singular	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
nom. and voc.	acer	acris	acre
acc.	acrem	acrem	acre
gen.	acris	acris	acris etc. like fortis

**E** Some third declension adjectives resemble nouns in their declension, e.g. *vetus veteris* → *old*.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
nom. and voc.	vetus	vetus	veteres	vetera
acc.	veterem	vetus	veteres	vetera
gen.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
dat.	veteri	veteri	veteribus	veteribus
abl.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

Like *vetus*, and also often used as nouns, are *pauper -eris* → *poor* and *dives -itis* → *rich*, although *dives* has the contracted forms: sing. nom. *dis*, acc. *ditem*, gen. *ditis*, dat. and abl. *diti*, plural nom. and acc. *dites* (m. and f.), *ditia* (n.), gen. *ditium*, dat. and abl. *ditibus*.

**1** Translate the following sentences into English. The adjectives decline like *ingens*.

**e.g.** *canem ingentem habeo* → *I have a huge dog*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a iuvenes audaces trans flumen<br>natauerunt.     | f senex cum adulescente per vias<br>ambulabat. |
| b togam viri felicitis pueri tangebant.           | g prudentem maritum feminae<br>probant.        |
| c pugiles viribus paribus<br>pugnauerunt.         | h magistratus impotentes erant.                |
| d moenia ingentia circum urbem<br>aedificauerunt. | i cives regi atroci resistebant.               |
| e speluncae ferarum ferocium in<br>montibus sunt. | j mentem ingenii capacem<br>philosophus habet. |

**2** Translate the following sentences into English. The adjectives go like *fortis*.

**e.g.** *per ianuam humilem insignis venit* → *the famous man came through the lowly door*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a clamores fortium audio.              | g Athenienses communem<br>thesaurum habebant.  |
| b fabulas tristes fidicen cantabat.    | h pompae grandes per vias<br>procedebant.      |
| c oratori insigni cives parent.        | i onera gravia trans pontem aselli<br>portant. |
| d iter facile fortibus est.            | j in loco incolumi gemmas celavi.              |
| e saporem mellis dulcis amo.           |  |
| f liberis omnibus pater dona<br>dedit. |  |

**3** Translate the following sentences into English. The adjectives go like *acer* or *vetus*.

**e.g.** *fabulas veteres liberi amant* → *the children love old stories*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a sonitum equorum acrium audio.           | f actorem celebrem in theatro<br>plaudimus.          |
| b vetera templa Augustus<br>renovavit.    | g pauper ad portas divitis sedebat.                  |
| c cum monstis volucris Iason<br>pugnavit. | h peregrinatores ad delubrum<br>sospites advenerunt. |
| d aquas salubres ad fontem<br>bibimus.    | i alacris gradibus nuntii<br>festinaverunt.          |
| e cursus non semper celeribus est.        | j elephantum omnium memores sunt.                    |

**4** Translate the following sentences into Latin using third declension adjectives.

**e.g.** *we were sitting in a packed inn* → *in taberna frequenti sedebamus*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a The swift runner greeted the<br>sad citizens. | f Young men respect the old.                    |
| b I shall send a letter to the cruel<br>tyrant. | g Lions like the taste of bold<br>children.     |
| c Marcus is the son of a poor<br>man.           | h The Gauls closed the road with<br>huge rocks. |
| d The house is on a green hill.                 | i You (pl.) will not overcome the<br>brave.     |
| e Pericles persuaded everyone.                  | j We seek a swift horse.                        |

**A** There are three degrees of comparison:

- positive e.g. fortis -is -e → *brave*
- comparative e.g. fortior fortior fortius → *braver, rather brave, too brave*
- superlative e.g. fortissimus -a -um → *bravest, very brave, most brave*

**B** The comparative adjective is formed by adding -ior -ior -ius to the positive stem, e.g. durus → *harsh*: durior → *harsher*. These are third declension and decline like fortior → *braver*.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
nom. and voc.	fortior	fortius	fortiores	fortiora
acc.	fortiorem	fortius	fortiores	fortiora
gen.	fortioris	fortioris	fortiorum	fortiorum
dat.	fortiori	fortiori	fortioribus	fortioribus
abl.	fortiore	fortiore	fortioribus	fortioribus

**C** Superlative adjectives are first and second declension and decline like bonus -a -um (see Unit 33 **C**).

- These are formed mostly by adding -issimus -issima -issimum to the stem of the positive form, e.g. durus → *harsh*: durissimus → *very harsh*.
- The superlatives of adjectives which end in -er, like tener → *tender*, acer → *keen* etc. end in -errimus -errima -errimum, e.g. acer → *keen*: acerrimus → *very keen*.
- The superlatives of six adjectives which end in -ilis (facilis → *easy*, difficilis → *difficult*, similis → *like*, dissimilis → *unlike*, gracilis → *slender*, graceful and humilis → *lowly*) all end in -illimus -illima -illimum, e.g. facilis → *easy*: facillimus → *very easy*.
- Adjectives ending in -eus, -ius or -uus use the adverbs magis → *more* and maxime → *most*, e.g. dubius → *doubtful*, magis dubius → *more doubtful* and maxime dubius → *most doubtful*. However, adjectives ending in -uus can be regular, e.g. antiquior → *older*, antiquissimus → *oldest*.

**D** Irregular forms of comparison

bonus → <i>good</i>	melior → <i>better</i>	optimus → <i>best, very good</i>
inferus → <i>lower</i>	inferior → <i>lower</i>	infimus (or imus) → <i>lowest</i>
magnus → <i>big</i>	maior → <i>bigger</i>	maximus → <i>biggest, very big</i>
malus → <i>bad</i>	peior → <i>worse</i>	pessimus → <i>worst, very bad</i>
multi → <i>many</i>	plures → <i>more</i>	plurimi → <i>most, very many</i>
multus → <i>much</i>	plus → <i>more</i>	plurimus → <i>most, very much</i>
nequam → <i>wicked</i>	nequior → <i>more wicked</i>	nequissimus → <i>very wicked</i>
parvus → <i>small</i>	minor → <i>less, smaller</i>	minimus → <i>least, very small</i>
superus → <i>upper</i>	superior → <i>higher</i>	supremus (or summus) → <i>highest</i>

**Plus (more)** is used in the singular only as a neuter noun. In the plural it is an adjective.

	Singular Neuter	Plural Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
nom., voc. and acc.	<b>plus</b>	<b>plures</b>	<b>plura</b>
gen.	<b>pluris</b>	<b>plurium</b>	<b>plurium</b>
dat.	—	<b>pluribus</b>	<b>pluribus</b>
abl.	<b>plure</b>	<b>pluribus</b>	<b>pluribus</b>

**E** In Latin comparisons are expressed in one of two ways.

- With **quam** → *than*, using the same case after **quam** as before it. This is how we express comparison in English, e.g. **Brutus altior quam Cassius est** → *Brutus is taller than Cassius*.
- With the ablative of comparison (see Unit 29 **C**). This is only used if the thing or person being compared is in the nominative or accusative, e.g. **nihil libertate melius est** → *nothing is better than freedom*.

**F** Comparatives are also used with the ablative of measure of difference (see Unit 30 **D**), e.g. **formica nihilo maior musca est** → *the ant is no bigger than the fly*.

**G** For comparatives in a purpose clause, see Unit 66 **E**.

**H** The word **quam** is used with the superlative to mean as ... as possible, e.g. **quam plurimas urbes Romani ceperunt** → *the Romans took as many cities as possible*.

## **1 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** **mare altius quam lacus est** → *the sea is deeper than the lake*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a est ovum avis maioris.                        | g Romani hostibus fortioribus quam Graecis resistebant. |
| b fabulam peiorem numquam vidi.                 | h clamores equitum plurium audivimus.                   |
| c puella filium divitioris amat.                | i aedificia meliora Romani habent quam Galli.           |
| d nihil durius quam adamas est.                 | j ovis paulo minor quam caper est.                      |
| e iter longius via quam mari est.               |   |
| f Alpes multo altiores quam colles Romani sunt. |   |

## **2 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** **glacies gelidior aqua est** → *ice is colder than water*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a Socrates sapientissimus hominum erat.  | f stilus gladio fortior est.                   |
| b verba proditoris maxime dubia erant.   | g horti magis idonei agris sunt.               |
| c monstrum dentes acutissimos habet.     | h puella quam plurimas rosas matri colligebat. |
| d sanguis densior aqua est.              | i plurimi civium aurum quaesiverunt.           |
| e grues gracillimi super tecta volabant. | j elephantis multo gravidiores tauris sunt.    |

**Adverbs describe the action of a verb as well as adjectives, phrases or even other adverbs.**

### A Formation

Adverbs do not decline. Most are formed from the stems of the positive forms of adjectives.

- Those which come from first and second declension adjectives end in -e (or sometimes -o), e.g. *dure* → *harshly*, from *durus*, *digne* → *worthily*, from *dignus* and *tuto* → *safely*, from *tutus*.
- Those which come from third declension adjectives usually end in -iter or -ter, e.g. *fortiter* → *bravely*, from *fortis*, *prudenter* → *prudently*, from *prudens*.
- Some adverbs are formed from the accusatives or ablatives of adjectives, e.g. *primum* or *primo* → *firstly*, *multum* → *much* and *paulum* → *little*, *facile* → *easily*.
- Some are formed from verbs, e.g. *statim* → *at once*, from *sto* → *I stand*; *cursim* → *quickly*, from *curro* → *I run*.
- Some words used as adverbs are also used as prepositions, e.g. *ante* → *before*, *post* → *after*.

### B Negatives

- The negative adverbs are *non* → *not*, *haud* → *not*, which is used with other adverbs, adjectives and some verbs of knowing or thinking and *ne* → *do not / let not*, which is used to make commands negative (see Unit 49 E) and to make subjunctives in a main clause negative (see Unit 54). A common phrase is *ne ... quidem* → *not even*, e.g. *ne Brutus quidem* → *not even Brutus*.
- Note also that *neve* or *neu* are used for *et ne* and the following conjunctions are often used: *nec* → *nor*, *nec ... nec* → *neither ... nor*, and *neque* → *neither ... nor*.

### C Comparison

- The regular comparative adverb is the neuter accusative singular of the corresponding comparative adjective (see Unit 35), e.g. *fortius* → *more bravely*, from *fortis*; *tutius* → *more safely*, from *tutus*.
- The regular superlative adverb ends in -issime, -errime or -illime, e.g. *fortissime* → *very bravely*, *celerrime* → *very quickly* and *facillime* → *very easily*.
- When it follows *quam*, the superlative adverb means as ... as possible, e.g. *quam celerrime* → *as quickly as possible*, *quam facillime* → *as easily as possible*.

### D Irregular and other forms

*bene* → *well*

*diu* → *for a long time*

*intus* → *within*

*magnopere* → *greatly*

*male* → *badly*

*multum* → *much*

*nequiter* → *wickedly*

*melius* → *better*

*diutius* → *for a longer time*

*interius* → *further within*

*magis* → *more greatly*

*peius* → *worse*

*plus* → *more (in quantity)*

*nequius* → *more wickedly*

*optime* → *best*

*diutissime* → *for a very long time*

*intime* → *furthest within*

*maxime* → *very greatly*

*perissime* → *worst*

*plurimum* → *most*

*nequissime* → *most wickedly*



nuper → *recently*  
 paulum → *little*  
 post → *after*  
 (prae → *before*)  
 prope → *near*  
 saepe → *often*  
 (no positive)

(no comparative)  
 minus → *less*  
 posterius → *later on*  
 prius → *earlier*  
 propius → *nearer*  
 saepius → *more often*  
 potius → *rather*

nuperrime → *most recently*  
 minime → *least*  
 postremo → *finally*  
 primum, primo → *earliest*  
 proxime → *very near*  
 saepissime → *very often*  
 potissimum → *especially*

### 1 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. boves lente in agro ambulant → *the oxen are walking slowly in the field*

- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a puellae in lacum ultro desiluerunt. | f Marcus facile altissimus erat.    |
| b avarus liberos parum alebat.        | g Ciceronem magnopere laudavisti.   |
| c machinam fabri male refecerunt.     | h fere mille naves Graeci habebant. |
| d senex iuvenes sapienter erudiebat.  | i haud bene negotium agebant.       |
| e crimen vehementer reus abiuravit.   | j Iuliettam Romeo valde amabat.     |

### 2 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. statim ad patrem cucurrit → *he ran to his father immediately*

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| a civibus semper fideles erimus.    | f haud diu in cubiculo mansi.          |
| b domine, hospites mox advenient.   | g Cicero Catilinam iterum vituperavit. |
| c nusquam feminam pulchriorem vidi. | h cras Caesarem fortasse videbis.      |
| d alibi hostes oppugnabimus.        | i identidem filium advocavit.          |
| e cenam non multo ante paraverat.   | j pacem legati profecto petent.        |

### 3 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. responsum regi minime placuit → *the reply pleased the king very little*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a sicarii senatorem nequissime necaverunt. | f Varus bellum peius quam Caesar gessit.              |
| b poeta versus postremo perfecerat.        | g nuntium diutius exspectavimus.                      |
| c sacerdotes e templo tutissime fugerunt.  | h Cyclops minus callidus erat quam Ulysses.           |
| d quam celerrime ad custodes festinavi.    | i equites ad urbem pervenerunt celerius quam pedites. |
| e facilius ambulo quam curro.              | j ancilla multo melius saltat quam cantat.            |

**Conjunctions (*coniungo*)** are used to join linguistic units together. They may join words, phrases, clauses or entire sentences. Notice that some are used in a number of different ways.

**A** Coordinative conjunctions connect either two or more nouns in the same case or two or more simple sentences.

- **Connective:** *et, -que* (ending), *atque, ac* → *and*; *neque, nec* → *nor*; *et, etiam, quoque, item* → *also*.
- **Separative:** *aut, vel, -ve* (ending) → *either, or*; *sive, seu* → *whether, or*.
- **Adversative:** *sed, ast, at* → *but*; *autem* → *but, however*; *atqui* → *but yet*; *ceterum, verum, vero* → *moreover, but*; *at enim* → *but it will be said*; *tamen* → *however, nevertheless*; *attamen, veruntamen* → *but nevertheless*.
- **Causal:** *nam, namque, enim, etenim* → *for* and *enimvero* → *for indeed*.
- **Conclusive:** *ergo, itaque, igitur* → *therefore*; *quare, quamobrem, quapropter, quocirca* → *wherefore*.
- **Interrogative** (see also Unit 62): *num* → *surely not?*; *nonne* → *surely?* -*ne* (an ending which turns a statement into a question); *utrum ... an* → *whether ... or*; *annon, necne* → *or not?*

**B** Subordinative conjunctions are used to introduce a clause which is grammatically subordinate to another (see Unit 63).

- **Consecutive:** *ut* → *so that, with the result that*; *ut non* → *so that not*; *quin* → *but that*.
- **Final:** *ut* → *so that, in order that*; *ne, ut ne* → *lest*; *neve, neu* → *and lest*; *quo* → *whereby, in order that*; *quominus* → *whereby not, in order that not*.
- **Causal:** *quod, quia* → *because*; *cum, quoniam, quandoquidem* → *since*; *quippe* → *seeing that*; *siquidem* → *inasmuch as*.
- **Temporal:** *cum, ut* → *when, since*; *quando, ubi* → *when*; *dum, donec, quoad* → *while, as long as, until*; *quatenus* → *how long*; *antequam, priusquam* → *before*; *postquam* → *after*; *simul ac* → *as soon as*; *quotiens* → *as often as*.
- **Conditional:** *si* → *if*; *sin* → *but if*; *sive, seu* → *whether, or if*; *nisi, ni* → *unless*; *si non* → *if not*; *si modo* → *if only*; *modo, tantum* → *only*; *modo, dummodo* → *provided that*.
- **Concessive:** *etsi, etiamsi* → *even if, although*; *tametsi* → *although*; *quamquam, utut* → *however, although*; *quamvis* → *although, however much*; *cum* → *whereas*; *ut, licet* → *granting that*.
- **Comparative:** *ut, uti, velut, veluti, sicut, sicuti ceu* → *as*; *quomodo, quemadmodum* → *as, how*; *quam* → *as*; *utpote* → *as being*; *quasi, ut si* → *as if*; *ceu, tamquam* → *as though*.

**C** The following pairings of conjunctions are commonly found:

adeo ... ut → *so far ... that*

aut ... aut and vel ... vel → *either ... or*

et ... et, -que ... -que and -que ... et → *both ... and*

ita ... ut → *so ... that*

neque ... neque, nec ... nec, and neve ... neve → *neither ... nor*

sic ... ut → *so ... as*

sive ... sive and seu ... seu → *whether ... or*

tam ... quam → *so (as) ... as*

ut ... ita → *as ... so*

**D Position**

Some conjunctions never appear as the first word in their phrase, clause or sentence, notably *enim* → *for*, *autem* → *however*, *igitur* → *therefore* and *vero* → *but*. When translating you should usually put them first in the clause or phrase in English, unless sense dictates otherwise, e.g. *pater autem ianuam clausit.* → *However, father closed the door.*

**1** Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *aut Caesar aut nullus ero* → *I shall either be a Caesar or a nobody*

a panem circensesque civibus  
imperator praeiuit.

b cogito ergo sum.

c non modo pontes sed etiam  
aqueductus aedificabant.

d Milo extra portas stat nam  
custos est.

e actores male recitaverant;  
spectatores tamen plausuerunt.

f neque aurum neque argentum  
inveni.

g omnes tacebant nam dominus  
aegrotabat.

h et Brutus et Cassius Caesarem  
oppugnaverunt.

i nonne templum visitabis?

j laborem perfecimus itaque  
domum ambulamus.

**2** Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *cenam non edebam quod ova non amo* → *I did not eat dinner because I do not like eggs*

a quotiens canes latrant, corvi  
avolant.

b simul ac tuba sonuit, hostes  
impetum fecerunt.

c ut caelum tepescet, ita maria  
dilatabunt.

d liberi dum ludunt discunt.

e postquam mater discessit pueri  
clamabant.

f quoniam ludos edidit Caesarem  
laudamus.

g etiamsi mons altus est,  
ascendemus.

h quia hostes ubique sunt idcirco  
Romani semper pugnant.

i sive manebis sive discedes,  
civibus semper fidelis ero.

j Titus decidit quod celerius  
currebat.

**A** There are four types of numerals, each answering a question: **cardinal** (how many), **ordinal** (in what order), **distributive** (how many each or at a time) and **numeral adverbs** (how often).

**B** Selected numbers from 1 to 2000. Note that there is no zero in Latin.

Numeral	Cardinal	Ordinal	Numeral	Cardinal	Ordinal
1 I	unus -a -um	primus -a -um	29 XXIX	undetrīginta	undetrīgensimus
2 II	duo -ae -o	secundus	30 XXX	trīginta	trīgensimus
3 III	tres tria	tertius	40 XL	quadrīginta	quadrāgensimus
4 IV	quattuor	quartus	50 L	quīquaginta	quīquāgensimus
5 V	quinque	quintus	60 LX	sexaginta	sexāgensimus
6 VI	sex	sextus	70 LXX	septuaginta	septuāgensimus
7 VII	septem	septimus	80 LXXX	octoginta	octogēsimus
8 VIII	octo	octavus	90 XC	nonaginta	nonāgensimus
9 IX	novem	nonus	99 XCIX	undecenta	undecēsimus
10 X	decem	decimus	100 C	centum	centēsimus
11 XI	undecim	undecimus	101 CI	centum et unus	centēsimus primus
12 XII	duodecim	duodecim	200 CC	ducenti -ae -a	ducentēsimus
13 XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	300 CCC	trecenti	trecentēsimus
14 XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	400 CCCC	quadringenti	quadringentēsimus
15 XV	quindecim	quintus decimus	500 D	quingenti	quingentēsimus
16 XVI	sedecim	sextus decimus	600 DC	sescenti	sescentēsimus
17 XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	700 DCC	septingenti	septingentēsimus
18 XVIII	duodeviginti*	duodevicensimus	800 DCCC	octingenti	octingentēsimus
19 XIX	undeviginti*	undevicensimus	900 CM	nongenti	nongentēsimus
20 XX	viginti	vicensimus	1000 M	mille	millēsimus
21 XXI	unus et viginti	unus et vicensimus	2000 MM	duo milia	bismillēsimus

\* or octodecim → *eighteen* and novendecim → *nineteen*

**C** The **cardinal numbers** one, two and three decline. Note the endings **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-i** in the dative singular. These endings are also found in some pronouns (see Units 41–43).

• One

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom. and voc.	unus	una	unum		uni	unae	una
acc.	unum	unam	unum		unos	unas	una
gen.	unius	unius	unius		unorum	unarum	unorum
dat.	uni	uni	uni		unis	unis	unis
abl.	uno	una	uno		unis	unis	unis

• Two

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
nom. and voc.	duo	duae	duo
acc.	duos	duas	duo
gen.	duorum	duarum	duorum
dat.	duobus	duabus	duobus
abl.	duobus	duabus	duobus

• Three

Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
tres	tria
tres	tria
trium	trium
tribus	tribus
tribus	tribus

**D** **Cardinal numbers** from 4 to 100 do not decline. Hundreds from 200 to 900 decline like the plural of **bonus** (see Unit 33 **C**). The singular **mille** → *1000* is an adjective which does not decline but

its plural **milia** is a noun which goes like **cubilia** (see Unit 18 [C]) and is followed by a genitive, e.g. **multa milia passuum** → *many thousands of paces* (i.e. many miles).

**E** In compound numbers between 20 and 99 either the smaller number with **et** comes first or the larger number without **et**. Usually **unus** comes first but in numbers above 100 the larger comes first, whether with **et** or without it. Thousands are expressed either by putting cardinal numbers before **milia** (as in the preceding list) or by putting numeral adverbs like **bis** before **mille**.

**F** Ordinal and distributive numbers decline like **bonus** (see Unit 33 [C]).

- Distributive numbers are **singuli** → *one each, one at a time*, **bini** → *two each, two at a time*, **terni** → *three each, three at a time*, **quaterni** → *four each, four at a time*, **quini** → *five each, five at a time*, **seni** → *six each, six at a time* etc.
- Distributive numbers are used instead of cardinals with nouns which are plural in form but singular in meaning (e.g. **terna castra** → *three camps*), except that the plural of **unus** is used with such words instead of **singuli**, e.g. **una castra** → *one camp*.
- Distributive numerals are also used in the multiplication of numbers, e.g. **bis terna sunt sex** → *twice three are six*.

**G** Numeral adverbs are **semel** → *once*, **bis** → *twice*, **ter** → *thrice*, **quater** → *four times*, **quingens** (or **-es**) → *five times*, etc.

**H** When answering the question 'times how much?', the 'multiplicative' adjectives are used, e.g. **simplex -icis** → *single, times one*, **duplex -icis** → *double, twofold*, **triplex -icis** → *triple, threefold*, **quadruplex -icis** → *times four, fourfold*, **decemplex -icis** → *times ten, tenfold* etc.

**I** Titles like **triumvir** → *member of a board of three*, **duumvir** → *member of a board of two* and **decemvir** → *member of a board of ten*, refer to positions of authority in Rome and the empire. They are usually not translated but left in their Latin nominative form. They are declined like **vir** (see Unit 16 [C]). In the plurals **duoviri** and **tresviri**, both parts of the word decline, e.g. **duorumvirorum** → *of the duoviri*.

**J** Translate the following into English. Put the Roman numerals into Arabic numerals.

e.g. **DCCCLXXXVIII** → 888

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a duobus diebus aedificium<br>perfecerimus. | e animalia bina in navem<br>intrabant.            |
| b MCMLXVI                                   | f nonagensimo anno Graeci<br>foedus renovaverunt. |
| c rex septem et triginta annos<br>regnabat. | g viginti milia militum<br>exploratores viderunt. |
| d princeps ternos equos fratribus<br>dedit. | h cives decemviros valde timebant.                |

**A** Personal pronouns (I, you, etc.) are used only in place of nouns. They decline in Latin.

	1st person singular		2nd person singular	
nom. and voc.	ego	I	tu	you
acc.	me	me	te	you
gen.	mei	my, mine, of me	tui	of you, your, yours
dat.	mihi or mi	to, for me	tibi	to, for you
abl.	me	by, with, from me	te	by, with, from you
	Plural		Plural	
nom. and voc.	nos	we	vos	you
acc.	nos	us	vos	you
gen.	nostrī or nostrum	of us, our, ours of us	vestrī or vestrum	of you, your, yours of you
dat.	nobis	to, for us	vobis	to, for you
abl.	nobis	by, with, from us	vobis	by, with, from you

- The genitives **nostrī** and **vestrī** are objective genitives (see Unit 25 **F**), e.g. *nostrī memor* → *mindful of us*, while the genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are partitive genitives (see Unit 26 **G**), e.g. *multi vestrum* → *many of you*.
- For the personal pronoun of the 3rd person (he, she, it and they) Latin makes use of the pronouns **is**, **ea**, **id** → *he, she, it or that* (see Unit 40).
- The nominatives of personal pronouns are usually used only for emphasis in Latin because the endings of verbs already tell us who is performing the action.
- If **cum** → *with* is used with the ablative of personal pronouns it is always written after the word: **mecum** → *with me*, **tecum** → *with you*, **nobiscum** → *with us* and **vobiscum** → *with you*.

**B** Reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself, himself etc.) are used only in place of nouns. NB These must not be confused with the emphatic pronoun **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum** (see Unit 41 **A**).

- The reflexive pronouns of the 1st and 2nd person (myself, yourself, ourselves, yourselves) are the same as the personal pronouns but without the nominative, e.g. *me lavavi* → *I washed myself*, *vos fraudavistis* → *you have cheated yourselves*.
- The reflexive pronoun of the 3rd person is the same in the singular and the plural:
 

acc.	se or sese	himself, herself, itself or themselves
gen.	sui	of himself, herself, itself or themselves
dat.	sibi	to or for himself, herself, itself or themselves
abl.	se	by, with or from himself, herself, itself or themselves

For example: *Brutus se necavit* → *Brutus killed himself*.

**C** The possessive pronouns are used as adjectives and decline either like **bonus -a -um** or **pulcher -chra -chrum** (see Unit 33 **G**).

**meus mea meum** → *my, mine*

**noster nostra nostrum** → *our, ours*

**tuus tua tuum** → *your, yours*

**vester vestra vestrum** → *your*

(singular)

*yours* (plural)

**suus sua suum** → *his, hers, its or their own* (contrast **eius** and **eorum**: see Unit 40 **A**).

**NB** Of these only **meus** and **noster** have vocatives and the masculine vocative singular of **meus** is irregular: **mi**, e.g. **o mi fili** → *o my son*.

### 1 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** **ego puerum laudo sed tu castigas** → *I praise the boy but you criticize him*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a heri me Salvius visitavit.           | f tibi aurum dabo.                     |
| b vobiscum ad fundum ambulabimus.      | g iudices vobis ignoscent.             |
| c te amo.                              | h equites nobis lente appropinquabant. |
| d mihi pater fabulam narravit.         | i complures vestrum adsunt.            |
| e nostri odium Romanum notissimum est. | j nos manebimus sed vos discedetis.    |

### 2 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** **Sphinx se humum comiecit** → *the Sphinx hurled herself to the ground*

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| a nos vertimus ad septentriones.       | f donum mihi tenebo.         |
| b latrones se in speluncis celaverunt. | g nos numquam culpabimus.    |
| c pecuniae gratia vobis favetis.       | h mane semper me rado.       |
| d cur tibi non ignoscas?               | i sibi domum aedificaverunt. |
| e prae civibus te dedecoravisti.       | j Titus cultro se laesit.    |

### 3 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** **Caesar suos trans Rubiconem duxit** → *Caesar led his men across the Rubicon*

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| a vestimenta nova liberis vestris emi. | e cum suis fratribus pontem defendit. |
| b fundum nostrum Romani vastaverunt.   | f o mi fili, tandem te inveni.        |
| c equus tuus maior quam meus est.      | g tua culpa fur domum intravit.       |
| d anseres mei per noctem clamabant.    | h consilia vestra non probo.          |
|  | i sonitum vocis suae amat.            |
|  | j nostri contra Gallos pugnabant.     |

### 4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

**e.g.** *Tomorrow we shall see your (pl.) island* → **cras insulam vestram videbimus**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a I have shown you (s.) my beautiful villa. | f The gladiators have overcome our men.      |
| b We shall ride but you (pl.) will walk.    | g The prisoners will save themselves.        |
| c Narcissus loved himself too much.         | h The traitor will not save me.              |
| d The women came to the forum with us.      | i Father has made a raft for us.             |
| e Hercules, your glory is eternal.          | j The sailors collected food for themselves. |

**A** The demonstrative pronoun *is ea id* has two meanings. Either it is used as the 3rd personal pronoun (he, she and it) or it means 'that' (compare *ille illa illud* in **D**).

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom.	is	ea	id		ei	eae	ea
acc.	eum	eam	id		eos	eas	ea
gen.	eius	eius	eius		eorum	earum	eorum
dat.	ei	ei	ei		eis, iis	eis, iis	eis, iis
abl.	eo	ea	eo		eis, iis	eis, iis	eis, iis

The genitives *eius* and *eorum* are used to mean his, hers, its or theirs when referring to someone other than the subject, e.g. *fratrem eius agnovit* → *he recognized his (someone else's) brother*, but *fratrem suum agnovit* → *he recognized his (own) brother* (see Unit 39 **C**).

**B** The definitive pronoun *idem eadem idem* → *the same*, is like *is ea id*, with *-dem* added.

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom.	idem	eadem	idem		eidem	eadem	eadem
acc.	eundem	eandem	idem		eosdem	easdem	eadem
gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem		eorundem	earundem	eorundem
dat.	eidem	eidem	eidem		eisdem or iisdem	eisdem or iisdem	eisdem or iisdem
abl.	eodem	eadem	eodem		eisdem or iisdem	eisdem or iisdem	eisdem or iisdem

**C** The demonstrative pronoun *hic haec hoc* → *this*

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom.	hic	haec	hoc		hi	hae	haec
acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc		hos	has	haec
gen.	huius	huius	huius		horum	harum	horum
dat.	huic	huic	huic		his	his	his
abl.	hoc	hac	hoc		his	his	his

**D** The demonstrative pronoun *ille illa illud* → *that (over there)* can also be used to mean he, she or it. It is where the French articles *le* and *la* come from.

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom.	ille	illa	illud		illi	illae	illa
acc.	illum	illam	illud		illos	illas	illa
gen.	illius	illius	illius		illorum	illarum	illorum
dat.	illi	illi	illi		illis	illis	illis
abl.	illo	illa	illo		illis	illis	illis

**E** The demonstrative pronoun *iste ista istud* → *that*, declines like *ille* and means 'that near you' as opposed to 'that over there'. It is often disparaging in tone, e.g. *iste amicus me vituperavit* → *that friend of yours has insulted me*.



**1 Translate the following into English.****e.g.** id consilium optimum est → *that plan is the best*

- |                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a Portia eum valde amat.       | f heri idem monstrum vidi.          |
| b eae puellae in horto ludunt. | g vestimenta eorum peto.            |
| c eo tempore domi eramus.      | h ea pictura eorundem puerorum est. |
| d eandem feminam amamus.       | i eos numquam vidi.                 |
| e ei candidato non faveo.      | j eam servavi sed eum deserui.      |

**2 Translate the following into English.****e.g.** hic puer fortior quam Marcus est → *this boy is stronger than Marcus*

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| a haec verba incredibilia sunt.     | f leones in hac spelunca habitant.      |
| b vestigia huius ferae maxima sunt. | g procul ab hoc loco curremus.          |
| c pro libertate hoc die pugnabimus. | h huic Cassius invidet.                 |
| d hanc fabulam saepe audiui.        | i sculptor effigies horum civium facit. |
| e hos diu exspectavimus.            | j hunc fundum non ememus.               |

**3 Translate the following into English.****e.g.** faciem illius agnosco → *I recognize that man's face*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a istud non probamus.                           | e filium istius latronis non defendam.  |
| b illi senatores Caesarem necaverunt.           | f pictores illas domus ornabant.        |
| c per illam portam urbem intrabimus.            | g duces gentium illarum Romanis favent. |
| d pro illo reo orator eloquenter causam oravit. | h iuvenis illam intente spectat.        |
|   | i illum heri in foro vidimus.           |
|   | j iste canis me momordit.               |

**4 Translate the following into Latin.****e.g.** these seats are too high → *hae sellae altiores sunt*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a We shall see her soon.                | f This meal is excellent.                   |
| b These are the same trees.             | g I have washed this man's toga.            |
| c That plough is heavier than this one. | h We arrived at the temple on the same day. |
| d Nobody likes those clothes of yours.  | i I like the sound of those bells.          |
| e I have not heard it.                  | j They have given him that letter.          |

**A** The emphatic pronoun: *ipse ipsa ipsum*

The emphatic (or intensive) pronoun *ipse ipsa ipsum* → *self*, draws attention to something and is used as an adjective. It must not be confused with the reflexive pronoun (see Unit 39 **B**) which is used as a noun and is an essential part of the sentence structure whereas *ipse* is not. It can be translated in a variety of ways into English provided that there is some emphasis, e.g. *Marcus equum ipsum delegit* → *Marcus chose the very horse*, or *Marcus chose the horse itself*.

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum		ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum		ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius		ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
dat.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi		ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
abl.	ipso	ipsa	ipso		ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

**B** The relative pronoun: *qui quae quod* (see also Unit 64).

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom.	qui	quae	quod		qui	quae	quae
acc.	quem	quam	quod		quos	quas	quae
gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius		quorum	quarum	quorum
dat.	cui	cui	cui		quibus	quibus	quibus
abl.	quo	qua	quo		quibus	quibus	quibus

**NB** The dative and ablative plurals of this word can also be **quīs**.

- The relative pronoun *qui quae quod* → *who, which*, is used to introduce relative clauses. These clauses give us some more information about a word in the main clause, e.g. in the sentence *canem quem avia mihi dedit amo* → *I like the dog which my grandmother gave to me*, the relative clause (in bold italics) tells us something about the dog and the relative pronoun *quem* → *which*, introduces the clause and relates to the word *dog* in the main clause.
- The word to which a relative pronoun relates is called the **antecedent** (*canem* → *dog* in the preceding example). In Latin, the relative pronoun always agrees in **number** and **gender** with the antecedent but its **case** always depends on its function in the clause, e.g. in the previous example the word *quem* → *which* is accusative in Latin because it is the object of the clause 'which my grandmother gave to me'.
- In English, when the relative pronoun refers to a person it is one of the few words which decline (compare the personal pronouns in Unit 39 **A**): nom. **who**, acc. **whom** and gen. **whose**. In English, however, we sometimes use the word **that** or **what** instead of **who** or **which**, or even omit the relative pronoun altogether where the sense is obvious.

**e.g.** I know the man *whom* you mean.      I know the man you mean.

I know the man *that* you mean.

- In Latin, the antecedent can sometimes be omitted in the main clause if the sense is clear, e.g. **virum quem tu vidisti ego quoque vidi** → *I too have seen the man whom you saw*, can also be written **quem tu vidisti ego quoque vidi**. Furthermore, the antecedent can even be repeated in the relative clause, e.g. **virum quem tu vidisti ego virum quoque vidi**.
- The relative pronoun is far more common in Latin than in English. In addition to situations where we would use 'who' or 'which' in English, the Romans frequently used **qui quae quod** where we would use a demonstrative pronoun like 'this' or 'that', or even a personal pronoun, e.g. **quod consilium probo** → *I approve of that plan* (literally: which plan I approve.)
- For the use of **qui** in final (purpose) clauses, see Unit 66 □.

### 1 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** Brutus ipse epistolam legit → *Brutus read the letter himself*

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| a quis custodiet ipsos custodes?       | g cenam ipse coxi.           |
| b ea ipsa stolam elegit.               | h milites praetoriani ipsi   |
| c hoc ferro ipso Dido se necavit.      | imperatorem necaverunt.      |
| d hi captivi sunt liberi regis ipsius. | i scelus ipsum auctorem      |
| e eandem umbram ipsam heri             | patefecit.                   |
| iterum vidi.                           | j deam ipsam in templo vidi. |
| f meo avunculo ipso pecuniam           |                              |
| dedi.                                  |                              |

### 2 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** sumus quae edimus → *we are what we eat*

- |                                    |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a quos tu amas ego quoque amo.     | g ille est dux cui semper       |
| b illi sunt quibus numquam favebo. | parebimus.                      |
| c cenam quam paraveras erat        | h hic est senator cuius filium  |
| pessima.                           | Vitellia amat.                  |
| d is qui audet vincet.             | i aurum quod inveni gravissimum |
| e sunt optiones duae quarum        | est.                            |
| neutra bona est.                   | j qui gladium e saxo extraxerit |
| f Titus est iudex prae quo         | ille regnabit.                  |
| stabimus.                          |                                 |

### 3 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

**e.g.** the king crowned the queen herself → *rex ipse reginam coronavit*

- |                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a I have found the very gold      | f She herself has avoided the     |
| which the miser himself hid.      | dangers that we feared.           |
| b We shall catch the thieves who  | g We do not trust a man whose     |
| robbed you (s.).                  | father was a traitor.             |
| c They will build the house you   | h The women will save the city    |
| (s.) desire.                      | itself.                           |
| d I do not like what I have seen. | i You (pl.) will catch those very |
| e The monster itself is not       | thieves.                          |
| unfriendly.                       | j Not everything that glistens is |
|                                   | gold.                             |

**A** The indefinite pronoun *quidam quaedam quoddam* (or *quiddam*) → *a certain person, someone*, is quite close to the English indefinite article 'a'. It looks similar to the relative pronoun (see Unit 41 **B**) with the ending *-dam*. Other compounds of *qui* or *quis* (see **D**) decline in a similar way, changing the *-m* of the acc.sing. and gen. pl. to *-n*, as in *idem eadem idem* (see Unit 40 **B**).

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom.	quidam	quaedam	quoddam	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam	quosdam	quasdam	quaedam
gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quorundam	quarundam	quorundam
dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
abl.	quodam	quadam	quodam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

The dative and ablative plurals of this word can also be *quīsdam*.

**B** Another indefinite pronoun is *quis qua quid* (or *qui quae quod*) → *anyone, anything*. This declines in a similar way to the relative pronoun (see Unit 41 **B**) apart from the alternative forms of the nominative and accusative singulars; one used as a pronoun, the other as an adjective:

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plural Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
nom.	quis or qui	qua quae	quid (pronoun) quod (adjective)	qui	quae	quae (or qua)
acc.	quem	quam	quid (or quod)	quos	quas	quae (or qua)
gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
abl.	quo	qua	quo	quibus	quibus	quibus

**C** The interrogative pronoun *quis? quis? quid?* (or *qui? quae? quod?*) → *who? what?* is used to ask questions. It declines in almost exactly the same way as the relative pronoun (see Unit 41 **B**) apart from the alternative forms of the nominative and accusative singulars; one used as a pronoun, the other as an adjective:

**D** In these compounds of *quis* and *qui* the forms in brackets are used only as adjectives.

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
nom.	quis? or qui?	quis? quae?	quid? (pronoun) quod? (adjective)
acc.	quem?	quam?	quid? (or quod) etc. as the relative pronoun

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	
quicumque	quaecumque	quodcumque	<i>whosoever, whatsoever</i>
quisquis	quisquis	quidquid (or quicquid)	<i>whosoever, whatsoever</i>
aliquis	aliqua	aliquid	<i>someone, something</i>
aliqui	aliqua	aliquid	<i>someone, something</i>

quisque	quaeque	quidque (or quodque)	each
quisquam	quisquam	quidquam (or quicquam)	anyone at all
quispiam	quaepiam	quippiam (or quodpiam)	someone
quivis	quaevis	quidvis (or quodvis)	anyone you like
quilibet	quaelibet	quidlibet (or quodlibet)	anyone you like
unusquisque	unaquaeque	unumquidque (or unumquodque)	every single one
ecquis?	ecqua?	equid (or equod)?	is there anyone who?
quisnam?	quaenam?	quidnam (or quodnam)?	who, then?

# 1 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *quendam in horto heri vidi* → *I saw someone in the garden yesterday*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a equus cuiusdam super saepem salut.          | f venenis quibusdam senatorem sicarius interfecit. |
| b viator quidam quendam in via vidit.         | g cervos quosdam venatores aspexerunt.             |
| c candidato cuidam quem non nominabo favi.    | h quoddam consilium periculosum cepimus.           |
| d subter arbore quadam thesaurum celaverunt.  | i profugi quodam die ab urbe clam discedent.       |
| e quaedam verba infausta haruspex susurravit. | j nomina quorundam coniuratorum numquam sciemus.   |

# 2 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *quis nobis semitam monstrabit?* → *who will show us the way?*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a quid novi audivisti?                     | f quidquid pecuniae comparavi, tibi dabo. |
| b quemque virum de auro rogavi.            | g num avarus quidquam filio suo legavit?  |
| c quisnam illud monstrum liberavit?        | h ecqua Antonium amabit?                  |
| d Romani unumquemque vicanorum necaverunt. | i quos testes ad basilicam citabis?       |
| e quae signa arcana habent magi?           | j cuius est hic fundus?                   |

# 3 Translate the following into Latin.

**e.g.** *each man was carrying an axe* → *securim quisque portabat*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a Who is that woman?                             | g Whom (pl.) will the ambassador choose?  |
| b Titus will come to Rome with some friends.     | h Have you (s.) seen anyone at all today? |
| c I have heard a certain story from the old man. | i With whom (pl.) was the queen walking?  |
| d Melissa told me something about the master.    | j Some women will not support you (s.).   |
| e Each man has seen the temple.                  |   |
| f Whose (s.) gift have you (s.) taken?           |   |

**A** The following pronouns (also called 'pronominal adjectives') decline like **unus una unum** → *one* (see Unit 38 **C**): **ullus -a -um** → *any*, **nullus -a -um** → *none*, **totus -a -um** → *whole* and **solus -a -um** → *sole, lone*.

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom.	solus	sola	solum		solī	solae	sola
acc.	solum	solam	solum		solos	solas	sola
gen.	soli	soli	soli		solorum	solarum	solorum
dat.	soli	soli	soli		solis	solis	solis
abl.	solo	sola	solo		solis	solis	solis

**B** The declension of the pronoun **alius alia aliud** → *other, another* is:

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom.	alius	alia	aliud		aliī	aliae	alia
acc.	aliū	aliā	aliud		alios	alias	alia
gen.	alius	alius	alius		aliorum	aliarum	aliorum
dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī		aliis	aliis	aliis
abl.	alio	alia	alio		aliis	aliis	aliis

**C** The declension of **alter altera alterum** → *one (or the other) of two* is:

Singular	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
nom.	alter	altera	alterum		alterī	alterae	altera
acc.	alterū	alterā	alterum		alteros	alteras	altera
gen.	alterius	alterius	alterius		alterorum	alterarum	alterorum
dat.	alterī	alterī	alterī		alteris	alteris	alteris
abl.	altero	altera	altero		alteris	alteris	alteris

**D** **uter utra utrum** → *which (of two)? or whichever (of two)* and neuter **neutra neutrum** → *neither*, decline like **alter** except that they keep the letter *e* only in the nominative masculine singular **uter** and neuter.

**E** **nemo** → *nobody* declines: nom. **nemo**, acc. **neminem**, gen. **nullius**, dat. **nemini**, abl. **nullo**.

**F** Of the other adjectival pronouns which decline, the following decline:

- like **bonus -a -um** (see Unit 33 **C**): **tantus -a -um** → *so great*, **quantus -a -um** → *how great, how big*, **quantuscumque -acumque -umcumque** → *however great* and **aliquantus -a -um** → *some (quantity), considerable*.
- like **fortis -is -e** (see Unit 34 **C**): **talis -is -e** → *of such a kind*, **qualis -is -e** → *of what kind?*, **qualiscumque -iscumque -ecumque** → *of whatsoever kind*.
- like **uter utra utrum** (see **D**): **alteruter alterutra alterutrum** → *one or other (of two)*, **utercumque utracumque utrumcumque** → *whichever of two*.

**1 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** soli pro portis stabamus → *we were standing alone before the gates*

- a utrum consulem Carthaginienses interfecerunt?
- b ullis modis montes ascendemus.
- c Cloelia sola hostibus resistebat.
- d fratrem alterum alteri antepono.
- e aliud consilium capiemus.
- f nullas naves in portu vidimus.
- g Cicero laudem totius senatus accepit.
- h neutra puella actorem agnovit.
- i neminem Hercules timebat.
- j Clodia maritum alius feminae amat.

**2 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** tempestatem tantam numquam vidimus → *we have never seen such a great storm*

- a custodes alterutrum captivorum necaverunt.
- b talibus verbis orator civibus persuasit.
- c qualia sunt haec dona?
- d quantus est elephantus?
- e utrocumque consuli qui mercedes dabit favebo.
- f aliquantam pecuniam a patre comparavi.
- g talis iuvenis numquam miles erit.
- h cum qualibus comitibus iter facies?
- i tantas fabulas Petronius semper dat.
- j aliquanto condimento coquus cenam condivit.

**3 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** *we have seen the peoples of the whole world* → **populos totius mundi vidimus**

- a What kind of husband will Cloelia marry?
- b How great is the power of the gods?
- c Nobody believed Cassandra.
- d The one consul has seriously offended the other.
- e I alone shall support Lepidus.
- f Tomorrow we shall see the temples of another city.
- g Which of the (two) sisters do you (s.) love?
- h Desperate men will adopt any plans.
- i We have not often seen such treasures.
- j They have seen neither brother today.

**A** Participles are the parts of a verb which are used like adjectives or nouns to denote a state or condition, or to denote a person or thing in that state or condition. They have three tenses:

- The present and the future, which are active, i.e. the person or thing referred to by the participle is **performing** the action (see Unit 2 **E**), e.g. *walking* (present); *about to go* (future).
- The perfect, which is passive, i.e. the person or thing referred to by the participle is **experiencing** the action (see Unit 2 **E**), e.g. *loosened*, *having been loosened*.

**B** The present participle is formed by adding **-ns** onto the present stem of first and second conjugation verbs and **-ens** to the final consonant of the present stem of third conjugation verbs and to the characteristic long *i* of the present stem of fourth conjugation verbs. The resulting word declines like the third declension adjective *ingens* (see Unit 34 **E**), e.g. *portans* *portantis* → *carrying*, *habens* *habentis* → *having*, *agens* *agentis* → *doing*, *capiens* *capientis* → *taking* and *audiens* *audientis* → *hearing*.

- The present participle is used as in English as an adjective to describe someone or something performing an action at that moment. Because the present participle is an active form of the verb, it can take an object, e.g. *pueri onera portantes ad urbem currunt* → *the boys run to the city carrying loads*.

It is also used as a noun to refer to a person or thing doing something, e.g. *voces clamantium audiui* → *I heard the voices of the people shouting*.

**C** The perfect participle is formed from the fourth principal part of a verb. Either the fourth principal part will be the supine (see Units 2 **E** and 50) or it will be the perfect participle itself. If it is the supine then replace the final **-um** with **-us** and you have the perfect participle. It declines like the first and second declension adjective *bonus -a -um* (see Unit 33 **C**), e.g. *portatus -a -um* → *carried, having been carried*; *habitus -a -um* → *had, having been had*; *actus -a -um* → *done, having been done*; *auditus -a -um* → *heard, having been heard*.

- The perfect participle is used as in English as an adjective to describe someone or something who or which has experienced the action of the verb and may still be doing so, e.g. *flumen inundatum aspectabamus* → *we were gazing at the flooded river*. It is also used as a noun to refer to something which has experienced the action of a verb, e.g. *captos per loca deserta ducebat* → *he led the captured men across the desert*.

**D** The future participle is formed by adding **-urus** to the stem of the perfect participle (see **C**). The word declines like the first and second declension adjective *bonus -a -um* (see Unit 33 **C**), e.g. *portaturus -a -um* → *about to carry*, *habiturus -a -um* → *about to have*, *acturus -a -um* → *about to do*, *auditurus -a -um* → *about to hear*.



- The future participle is used as an adjective to describe someone about to, on the point of doing or intending to do something. Because the future participle is an active form of the verb, it can take an object, e.g. *puer patrem salutaturus e horreo cucurrit* → *the boy ran out of the barn (intending) to greet his father*. It is also used as a noun to refer to people who are about to do something, e.g. *ave Caesar! morituri te salutant* → *Hail Caesar! Those about to die salute you* (see Unit 55).

### 1 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *dormientem hospitem caupo necavit* → *the innkeeper slew the guest as he slept*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a agricolae frumentum in agris demetentes cantabant.   | f trans flumen fremens caute vadebamur.            |
| b animalia per flumen salientia crocodili oppugnabant. | g civibus dubitantibus orator persuasit.           |
| c puerum ad portas currentem video.                    | h matri convalescenti dona misi.                   |
| d alas pueri volantis sol liquefecit.                  | i feles murem in herba latentem spectabat.         |
| e clamores diem festum celebrantium audivimus.         | j peregrinatores urbi appropinquantes salutavimus. |

### 2 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *placentas incensas coquus celavit* → *the cook hid the burnt cakes*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a rotam fractam fabri reficiebant.                     | g meam puellam amatam saepe visito.           |
| b milites victi ad castra cucurrerunt.                 | h effigiem deae ornatae sacerdotes portabant. |
| c nuntium exspectatum tandem audivimus.                | i nitorem lapidum expolitorum puer amat.      |
| d ossa in ruinis templi deleti inveni.                 | j verba in libro scripta pulcherrima erant.   |
| e orator pro civibus fraudatis eloquenter dixit.       |   |
| f exploratores, a custodibus visi, statim diffugerunt. |   |

### 3 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *hic iacet Arturus; rex quondam rexque futurus* → *here lies Arthur; once and future king*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a puerum in lutum salturum castigavi.     | e pontem transituri, ex equis descenderunt.      |
| b filius militi patrem necaturo obstitit. | f gladiatores pugnatueros acriter plauserunt.    |
| c vas casurum cepi.                       | g matronae ad forum ambulabant, stolas empturae. |
| d tempestatem venturam timeamus.          | h haec est lyra poetae canturi.                  |

**A** The two **voices** of a verb reflect whether the subject is **performing** the action (**active voice**) or **experiencing** the action (**passive voice**). See also Unit 2 **B**.

**e.g.** The dog **has stolen** the biscuit (active).  
The dog **has been stolen** by the pirate (passive).

**B** In English we form the **passive voice** by using the appropriate tense of the verb *to be* with the **past participle**. In the example **has been** is the appropriate tense of 'to be' (perfect) and **stolen** is the past participle.

**C** The form of the **passive voice** for **present, future** and **imperfect** tenses of all the four conjugations is straightforward. The following table compares the endings:

	Active ending	Passive ending
1st person singular (I)	-o / -m	-or / -r
2nd person singular (you)	-s	-ris / -eris (or -re)
3rd person singular (he/she/it)	-t	-tur
1st person plural (we)	-mus	-mur
2nd person plural (you)	-tis	-mini
3rd person plural (they)	-nt	-ntur

**D** Examples of the passive form of each of the three tenses from the four conjugations are:

- present first conj.: portor portaris portatur portamur portamini portantur
- future first conj.: portabor portaberis portabitur portabimur portabimini portabuntur
- imperfect first conj.: portabar portabaris portabatur portabamur portabamini portabantur
- present second conj.: habeor haberis habetur habemur habemini habentur
- future second conj.: habebor habebis habebitur habebimur habebimini habebuntur
- imperfect second conj.: habebam habebaris habebatur habebamur habebamini habebantur
- present third conj.: agor ageris agitur agimur agimini aguntur
- future third conj.: agam ageris agetur agemur agemini aguntur
- imperfect third conj.: agebam agebaris agebatur agebamur agebamini agebantur
- present fourth conj.: audior audiris auditur audimur audimini audiuntur
- future fourth conj.: audiam audieris audietur audiemur audiemini audientur
- imperfect fourth conj.: audiebam audiebaris audiebatur audiebamur audiebamini audiebantur

**E Agent and instrument**

- When a passive verb is used we need to know the **agent** (person) or **instrument** (thing) **by whom** or **by which** the action is performed. In the example in **A** the pirate is the **agent** because it was he who did the stealing.

- In Latin the **agent** is expressed using a / ab → *by*, plus the ablative of agent (see Unit 30 **L**), e.g. *canis a matrona portatur* → *the dog is being carried by the lady*.
- In Latin the **instrument** is expressed using the plain ablative of instrument (see Unit 30 **M**), e.g. *agri flumine inundantur* → *the fields are being flooded by the river*.

**1 Write out the following passive tenses of the verbs below.**

**e.g.** the present passive of *amo* → *amor, amaris, amatur, amamur, amamini, amantur*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a the future passive of <i>duco</i>    | f the imperfect passive of <i>doceo</i>  |
| b the present passive of <i>facio</i>  | g the present passive of <i>custodio</i> |
| c the imperfect passive of <i>rego</i> | h the future passive of <i>iubeo</i>     |
| d the present passive of <i>servo</i>  | i the imperfect passive of <i>dico</i>   |
| e the future passive of <i>capio</i>   | j the present passive of <i>moneo</i>    |

**2 Translate the following verbs into English.**

**e.g.** *liberabimur* → *we shall be freed*

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| a <i>persuaderis</i> | f <i>rapientur</i>  |
| b <i>trahar</i>      | g <i>dantur</i>     |
| c <i>secabimur</i>   | h <i>arcessimur</i> |
| d <i>amaberis</i>    | i <i>movebamini</i> |
| e <i>sentiebatur</i> | j <i>delebaris</i>  |

**3 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** *precibus non movebimur* → *we shall not be moved by prayers*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a <i>dumis aries tenebatur.</i>          | f <i>montibus impedimur.</i>            |
| b <i>ab Artemidoro Caesar monebitur.</i> | g <i>agmen a Tiberio ducetur.</i>       |
| c <i>dona a nepotibus tibi dabuntur.</i> | h <i>Aeneas sagitta vulneratur.</i>     |
| d <i>cena a coquo coquebatur.</i>        | i <i>a consulibus laudabamur.</i>       |
| e <i>imperator ab hostibus capietur.</i> | j <i>grana ab agricolis sparguntur.</i> |

**4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** *you (s.) are loved by a worthy man* → *a virō digno amaris*

- I shall be heard by all.
- You (pl.) will be taught by the best teachers.
- The orator is believed by many.
- The story was being narrated by the old man.
- They are being watched by the dogs.
- The doors were being closed by the slaves.
- The girl will be bitten by a snake.
- The ship was being broken by the waves and rocks.
- It will be announced tomorrow.
- The book was being written by a very clever scribe.

These tenses are formed in the same way for verbs of all four conjugations.

### A Perfect passive

- The perfect passive tense is formed by using the perfect passive participle (see Unit 44 **C**) and the present tense of *to be* (sum es est etc.).

**e.g.** portatus sum → I have been carried  
 portatus es → you (s.) have been carried  
 portatus est → he has been carried  
 portati sumus → we have been carried  
 portati estis → you (pl.) have been carried  
 portati sunt → they have been carried

- The participle declines and so changes number and gender depending on the number and gender of the subject. So, if the subject is feminine we find e.g. **portata** est → *she has been carried*, while if the subject is neuter we find e.g. **portatum** est → *it has been carried*.

### B Future perfect passive

- The future perfect passive is formed with the perfect passive participle (see Unit 44 **C**) and the future tense of *to be* (ero eris erit etc.).

**e.g.** portatus ero → I shall have been carried  
 portatus eris → you (s.) will have been carried  
 portatus erit → he will have been carried  
 portati erimus → we shall have been carried  
 portati eritis → you (pl.) will have been carried  
 portati erunt → they will have been carried

- The participle declines, just as for the perfect passive, e.g. **portata** erit → *she will have been carried*, **portatum** erit → *it will have been carried*.

### C Pluperfect passive

- The pluperfect passive is formed with the perfect passive participle (see Unit 44 **C**) and the imperfect tense of *to be* (eram eras erat etc.).

**e.g.** portatus eram → I had been carried  
 portatus eras → you (s.) had been carried  
 portatus erat → he had been carried  
 portati eramus → we had been carried  
 portati eratis → you (pl.) had been carried  
 portati erant → they had been carried

- The participle declines, just as for the perfect passive, e.g. **portata** erat → *she had been carried*, **portatum** erat → *it had been carried*.

- For the agent and instrument after these verbs, see Unit 45 **E**.

# 1 Write out the passive tenses of the following verbs.

e.g. the perfect passive of *amo* → *amatus sum, amatus es, amatus est, amati sumus, amati estis, amati sunt*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a the perfect passive of <i>habeo</i>        | f the perfect passive of <i>moneo</i>    |
| b the future perfect passive of <i>ago</i>   | g the perfect passive of <i>custodio</i> |
| c the pluperfect passive of <i>audio</i>     | h the pluperfect passive of <i>facio</i> |
| d the future perfect passive of <i>capio</i> | i the perfect passive of <i>laudo</i>    |
| e the pluperfect passive of <i>duco</i>      | j the perfect passive of <i>exspecto</i> |

# 2 Translate the following verbs into English.

e.g. *visa est* → *she has been seen*

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| a <i>factum erat</i>    | f <i>ignota erit</i>      |
| b <i>laudata est</i>    | g <i>servata erat</i>     |
| c <i>perfectum erit</i> | h <i>notatum est</i>      |
| d <i>prodit a est</i>   | i <i>punita est</i>       |
| e <i>scriptum erat</i>  | j <i>aedificatum erit</i> |

# 3 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *naves a nautis ornatae erant* → *the ships had been decorated by the sailors*

- a *dona a rege data erant.*
- b *asini oneribus oppressi sunt.*
- c *epistulae a legatis missae erunt.*
- d *seges tempestatibus corrupta erat.*
- e *cras urbs capta erit.*
- f *reges a civibus expulsi sunt.*
- g *gemmae a furibus surreptae erant.*
- h *nodus notissimus ab Alexandro intercisus est.*
- i *agna aquila erepta est.*
- j *consilia a proditoribus patefacta erunt.*

# 4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *the prisoners had been bound by the guards* → *captivi a custodibus vincti erant*

- a The lamps will have been lit by the servant.
- b The farms had been sold by the bailiff.
- c Mother has been eaten by crocodiles.
- d The beautiful roses had been plucked by the girl.
- e The hare will have been beaten by the tortoise.
- f We have been cheated by the merchants.
- g The ghost had never been seen by the boys.
- h The fields had been laid waste by the soldiers.
- i This land was ruled by a wizard.
- j The citizens will have been provoked by the barbarians.

**A** The infinitives are those parts of the verb which in English have the word **to** in front of them. They have active and passive voices and present, future and perfect tenses. They express a verbal idea generally, without being limited to a person or number (i.e. not finite).

**B** In Latin the **second principal part** of a verb is its **present active infinitive** which you met in Units 2 **E** and 3 **C**. The present active infinitives end in **-re**.

**e.g.** first conjugation **-are**, e.g. **portare** → *to carry, to be carrying*  
 second conjugation **-ēre**, e.g. **habēre** → *to have etc.*  
 third conjugation **-ere**, e.g. **agere** → *to do etc.*  
 fourth conjugation **-ire**, e.g. **audire** → *to hear etc.*

**C** The **present passive infinitives** are similar to the present active but all end in **-i / -ri**.

**e.g.** first conjugation **-ari**, e.g. **portari** → *to be carried*  
 second conjugation **-eri**, e.g. **haberi** → *to be had*  
 third conjugation **-i**, e.g. **agi** → *to be done*  
 fourth conjugation **-iri**, e.g. **audiri** → *to be heard*

**D** The **perfect active infinitives** are formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem (found in the **third principal part** (see Units 2 **E** and 8 **B**)).

**e.g.** first conjugation **portavisse** → *to have carried* (a syncopated form **portasse** is sometimes found)  
 second conjugation **habuisse** → *to have had*  
 third conjugation **egisse** → *to have done*  
 fourth conjugation **audivisse** → *to have heard* (a syncopated form **audisse** is sometimes found)

**E** The **perfect passive infinitives** are formed using the **perfect passive participle** (see Unit 44 **C**) and the present infinitive of the verb **to be** (**esse**).

**e.g.** first conjugation **portatus esse** → *to have been carried*  
 second conjugation **habitus esse** → *to have been had*  
 third conjugation **actus esse** → *to have been done*  
 fourth conjugation **auditus esse** → *to have been heard*

**NB** The participle must always agree in number, gender and case with the noun it describes.

**F** The **future active infinitives** are formed from the **future participle** (see Unit 44 **D**) and the present infinitive of the verb **to be** (**esse**).

**e.g.** first conjugation **portaturus esse** → *to be about to carry, to be on the point of carrying*  
 second conjugation **habiturus esse** → *to be about to have etc.*  
 third conjugation **acturus esse** → *to be about to do etc.*  
 fourth conjugation **auditurus esse** → *to be about to hear etc.*

**NB** The participle must always agree in number, gender and case with the noun it describes.

**G** The future passive infinitives are formed from the fourth principal part (the supine: see Units 2 **E** and 50 **C**) and the present passive infinitive of *to go* (*iri*).

- e.g.** first conjugation **portatum iri** → *to be about to be carried, to be on the point of being carried*  
 second conjugation **habutum iri** → *to be about to be had* etc.  
 third conjugation **actum iri** → *to be about to be done* etc.  
 fourth conjugation **auditum iri** → *to be about to be heard* etc.

**1 Write down the active infinitives of the following verbs.**

**e.g.** the perfect active infinitive of *rego* → **rexisse**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a the present active infinitive of <b>venio</b> | f the perfect active infinitive of <b>capio</b>  |
| b the perfect active infinitive of <b>amo</b>   | g the future active infinitive of <b>doceo</b>   |
| c the future active infinitive of <b>ambulo</b> | h the future active infinitive of <b>aperio</b>  |
| d the present active infinitive of <b>teneo</b> | i the present active infinitive of <b>frango</b> |
| e the perfect active infinitive of <b>sedeo</b> | j the perfect active infinitive of <b>facio</b>  |

**2 Write down the passive infinitives of the following verbs.**

**e.g.** the present passive infinitive of *do* → **dari**

- a the future passive infinitive of **trado**
- b the perfect passive infinitive of **sperno**
- c the perfect passive infinitive of **iacio**
- d the present passive infinitive of **moveo**
- e the future passive infinitive of **rogo**
- f the present passive infinitive of **scribo**
- g the perfect passive infinitive of **video**
- h the future passive infinitive of **vinco**
- i the perfect passive infinitive of **vincio**
- j the present passive infinitive of **cresco**

**3 Translate the following infinitives into English.**

**e.g.** **redditurus esse** → *to be about to give back*

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| a <b>cecidisse</b>      | f <b>dictum iri</b>       |
| b <b>sepultum iri</b>   | g <b>respondere</b>       |
| c <b>puniturus esse</b> | h <b>laboraturus esse</b> |
| d <b>lavari</b>         | i <b>aedificatus esse</b> |
| e <b>iussisse</b>       | j <b>mitti</b>            |

**4 Translate the following infinitives into Latin.**

**e.g.** *to have broken* → **fregisse**

- |                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| a to remain                | f to be about to fly     |
| b to be recognized         | g to be found            |
| c to have been chosen      | h to have laughed        |
| d to be about to be closed | i to have been stretched |
| e to have dragged          | j to run                 |

**A** The prolativ infinitive is used as in English; to carry on the construction:

- After verbs of possibility, habit or duty such as: *possum* → *I am able* (irregular: see Unit 58), *queo* → *I am able*, *nequeo* → *I am unable*, *debeo* → *I ought* and *soleo* → *I am accustomed* (semi-deponent: see Unit 55), e.g. *non possum intellegere* → *I am not able to understand*.
- After verbs of wishing, intending or daring such as: *volo* → *I want*, *nolo* → *I do not want*, *malo* → *I prefer* (irregular: see Units 59 and 60), *cupio* → *I desire*, *opto* → *I choose*, *statuo* → *I determine*, *constituo* → *I decide* and *audeo* → *I dare* (semi-deponent: see Unit 55), e.g. *malo equitare* → *I prefer to ride*.
- After verbs of beginning, ceasing, trying, continuing, hurrying and hesitating such as: *incipio* → *I begin*, *coepe* → *I begin*, *desino* → *I cease from*, *desisto* → *I cease from*, *conor* → *I try* (deponent verb: see Unit 55), *pergo* → *I continue*, *persevero* → *I persist*, *festino* → *I hurry*, *propero* → *I hasten*, *dubito* → *I hesitate* and *timeo* → *I fear*, e.g. *desino pugnare* → *I cease to fight*.
- After verbs of knowing how to, learning and teaching such as: *scio* → *I know how to*, *disco* → *I learn* and *doceo* → *I teach*, e.g. *disco equitare* → *I am learning to ride*.
- After passive verbs of saying and thinking, e.g. *Caesar dicitur advenisse* → *Caesar is said to have arrived*.

**B** The historic infinitive is the present infinitive when it is used to make something which happened in the past seem more vivid, e.g. *pueri clamare, currere, cadere* → *the boys shouted, ran and fell*.

**C** The infinitive is also used after verbs of commanding:

- After *iubeo* → *I order* and *veto* → *I forbid* in indirect commands (see Unit 79), e.g. *veto te currere* → *I forbid you to run*.
- After the irregular negative imperative *noli* (s.), *nolite* (pl.) → *do not*, in direct commands (see Units 49 **E** and 59), e.g. *nolite pugnare pueri* → *do not fight, boys*.

**D** The infinitive is tantamount to a noun in constructions after impersonal verbs such as *placet* → *it pleases*, *licet* → *it is allowed* (see also Unit 56) and with impersonal phrases such as *difficile est* → *it is difficult*, *decorum est* → *it is seemly*, *iuvat* → *it helps* etc., e.g. *forsan et haec olim meminisse iuvabit* (Virgil) → *one day perhaps it will help to have remembered even these (troubles)*.

**E** For the infinitive depending upon an accusative in an indirect statement, see Unit 76 & 77.



**1 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** nequivimus portam claudere → *we were unable to shut the gate*

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| a Latinam linguam intellegere possum. | f caudices omina praetermittere optaverunt.       |
| b Caesar inimicis ignoscere solebat.  | g iuvenis Metellam in matrimonium ducere cupivit. |
| c aviam tuam visitavisse debes.       | h imperator amphitheatrum aedificare constituit.  |
| d malo in Gallia habitare.            | i non audeo leonem provocare.                     |
| e volo prae hospitibus canere.        | j nolo in agris dormire.                          |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** dubitamus sapienti contradicere → *we hesitate to contradict a wise man*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a perseverabimus terram idoneam quaerere. | g liberi timent domo discedere.          |
| b subito canes latrare inceperunt.        | h legati properabunt bello finem facere. |
| c festinamus matrem salutare.             | i Cicero pergebat Catilinam vituperare.  |
| d dubitavisti aquam fundere.              | j quando desistes servos exagitare?      |
| e pueri timebant lupis appropinquare.     |  |
| f spem habere numquam desinam.            |  |

**3 Translate the following sentences into English.**

**e.g.** hostes per portas irruere → *the enemy forced their way in through the gates*

- |  |
|--|
| a nemo sciebat illud nodum expedire.                 |
| b centurio iuvenes docebit milites esse.             |
| c numquam discam tibiis canere.                      |
| d Brutus se necavisse traditur.                      |
| e coniuratores Caesarem corripere, ferire, occidere. |
| f senatores Romulum dilaniavisse narrantur.          |
| g omnes araneae muscas decipere sciunt.              |
| h pistores vicinos veneno necavisse putabantur.      |
| i magister discipulos pacem amare docebat.           |
| j Nero matrem necavisse dicitur.                     |

**4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** *I want to play in the mud* → volo in luto ludere

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| a We ought to support the candidate. | f He knows how to fight.                  |
| b I prefer to sleep.                 | g I will teach you to write.              |
| c We are learning to swim.           | h You (pl.) persist in shouting.          |
| d You (s.) will cease to shout.      | i I dare to resist the Romans.            |
| e They have decided to depart.       | j We desire to see the statue of the god. |

**A** The imperative mood is used to give direct commands and requests in Latin as in English. It is a finite form of the verb existing in one tense (present), in the 2nd and 3rd persons, singular and plural and in both the active and passive voices. Imperatives do not always appear at the ends of clauses and sentences.

**B** The 2nd person imperative endings are formed as follows:

	Active Singular Plural	Passive Singular Plural
1st conjugation	porta portate → carry!	portare portamini → be carried!
2nd conjugation	habe habete → hold (have)!	habere habemini → be held!
3rd conjugation	age agite → do!	agere agimini → be done!
4th conjugation	audi audite → hear!	audire audimini → be heard!

- Common irregular imperatives are: *dic* → *say, tell!* from *dico*; *duc* → *lead!* from *duco*; *fer* (s.), *ferre* (pl.) → *carry!, bring!*, from *fero* (see Unit 61); *fac* → *make!* from *facio*; *i* → *go!* from *eo* (see Unit 61) and *es, este* → *be!* from *sum* (see Unit 58).

**C** There is another form of the imperative found in both the 2nd and 3rd persons. Its endings are *-to* (2nd person), *-tote* (3rd person singular) or *-nto* (3rd person plural). These are rarely used outside legal documents and in certain verbs like *esto* → *let him/her/it be* and *sunto* → *let them be*, from *sum* or *memento, mementote* → *remember*, from *memini* (see Unit 57 **A**).

#### **D** Direct commands

- In addition to the plain imperative, a direct command can also be expressed with the imperatives *fac, facite* or *cura, curate* → *take care that / see to it that* and a subjunctive verb (see also Unit 52), e.g. *omnes, curate pontem defendeatis* → *everyone, take care that you defend the bridge*.
- For polite commands the future indicative may be used, often followed by a subjunctive verb (see Unit 52), e.g. *facies ut donum mittatur* → *please see to it that the gift is sent*.

#### **E** Negative direct commands (prohibitions)

- The imperatives of the irregular verb *nolo* → *I am unwilling*, followed by an infinitive are used for negative direct commands (see Units 48 **C** and 59), e.g. *noli* (or *nolite*) *discedere* → *do not leave*.
- *cave ne* → *beware of*, *fac ne* → *see that you do not*, or simply *ne* → *do not*, followed by the subjunctive is also used to express prohibitions (see Units 52 and 54).
- *ne* followed by the imperative is used in poetry, e.g. *equo ne credite Teuceri* → *do not trust the horse, Trojans*.

**F** The imperative is used for the greetings *salve, salvete* → *hello*; *vale, valete* → *goodbye*; *ave, avete* → *hello* or *goodbye*. Compare *apage* → *away with you!* and *age, agite* → *come on!*

# 1 Write out the imperatives of the following verbs.

e.g. the passive imperatives of *teneo* → *tenere, tenemini*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a the passive imperatives of <i>rego</i>    | g the active imperatives of <i>respondeo</i>  |
| b the active imperatives of <i>parco</i>    | h the active imperatives of <i>vincio</i>     |
| c the passive imperatives of <i>lenio</i>   | i the passive imperatives of <i>persuadeo</i> |
| d the active imperatives of <i>amo</i>      | j the active imperatives of <i>rapio</i>      |
| e the passive imperatives of <i>agnosco</i> |   |
| f the passive imperatives of <i>aperio</i>  |   |

# 2 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *semper bonis fidite liberi* → *always trust good men, children*

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| a cives, monemini a me.                    | f ambulate mecum ad forum senatores. |
| b carpe diem.                              | g da mihi lucernam Aladdin!          |
| c ferte haec onera ad portum.              | h aut disce aut discede.             |
| d salвете discipuli. salve magister.       | i pax esto in mundo.                 |
| e accipe hoc donum pro<br>fautoribus tuis. | j ave atque vale amice.              |

# 3 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *noli ab urbe discedere ante noctem* → *do not leave the city before nightfall*

- a nolite id facere pueri.
- b nolite canes dormientes suscitare.
- c matronae, nolite alibi vestimenta emere.
- d noli sollicitari; gaude.
- e ne fraudamini a tabernariis iuvenes.
- f noli tenebras timere mi fili.
- g noli ullum maius quam caput tuum consumere.
- h noli calceis meis caeruleis de pelle suilla fabricatis insistere.
- i nolite lilia inaurare.
- j nolite in pratum ambulare.

# 4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *listen to the speaker's words, everyone* → *omnes, verba oratoris audite*

- a Citizens, do not punish the priests.
- b Children, be brave.
- c Away with you, Titus! Nobody believes you.
- d Hand me the salt, Sextus.
- e Boys, do not mock my little horse.
- f Do not ignore the oracles, Caesar.
- g Welcome the guests, master.
- h Push that rock more quickly, Sisyphus!
- i Lead the gladiators into the arena, Maximus.
- j Hide your gold in the bedroom, Quintus.

**A** The **gerund** is a **verbal noun** which exists only in the singular. It is **active** in meaning and therefore can sometimes take an object if it is from a transitive verb. It declines as a neuter second declension noun in **-um** (see Unit 15 **D**) but without a nominative. It is formed by adding **-ndum** to the **present stem** of first and second conjugation verbs and **-endum** (or sometimes **-undum**) to the final consonant of the **present stem** of third conjugation verbs and to the characteristic long *ī* of the present stem of fourth conjugation verbs.

**e.g.** first conjugation **portandum** → *the (act of) carrying*  
 second conjugation **habendum** → *the (act of) having*  
 third conjugation: **agendum** (or **agundum**) → *the (act of) doing*  
 fourth conjugation: **audiendum** (or **audiundum**) → *the (act of) hearing*.

**B** The **gerund** is used:

- In the accusative after **ad** (to express purpose) and sometimes after **ob** or **inter**, e.g. **Titus ad dormiendum domum venit** → *Titus went home to sleep*.
- In the genitive after abstract nouns and adjectives which take the genitive, e.g. **amor bibendi** → *a love of drinking*; **cupida te videndi est** → *she is desirous of seeing you* (i.e. she wants to see you).
- In the dative (rarely) after some verbs, adjectives and nouns implying help, fitness or use, e.g. **par est currendo** → *he is equal to running*.
- In the ablative, with or without a preposition to indicate cause or instrument (see Unit 30 **M**), e.g. **clarissime clamando eum servaverunt** → *they saved him by shouting very loudly*.

**C** The **supine** is a fourth declension verbal noun and is usually the **fourth principal part** (see Unit 2 **E**). It means the act of doing something and exists in two cases: accusative (ending in **-um**) and ablative (ending in **-u**).

**D** The **supine** is used:

- In the accusative after verbs of motion to express purpose, e.g. **ad fundum frumentum messum veniunt** → *they go to the farm (in order) to harvest the grain*.
- In the accusative to form the **future passive infinitive** (see Unit 47 **G**).
- In the ablative after certain adjectives of perception like **facilis**, **mirabilis**, **crudelis**, **dulcis**, **miserabilis**, **turpis**, **terribilis** and after **fas** → *right* and **nefas** → *wrong*, where in English we would use a **gerund** or an **infinitive**, e.g. **mirabile visu** → *marvellous in the seeing* (or *wonderful to see*), **nefas dictu** → *wrong in the telling* (or *wrong to mention*) and **miserabile auditu** → *wretched in the hearing* (or *wretched to hear*).

# 1 Write out the gerunds or supines of the following verbs.

**e.g.** the gerund of *facio* → *faciendum*

- |                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| a the supine of <i>sedeo</i>   | f the supine of <i>adduco</i>  |
| b the gerund of <i>effugio</i> | g the gerund of <i>valeo</i>   |
| c the gerund of <i>excuso</i>  | h the supine of <i>sopio</i>   |
| d the supine of <i>intexo</i>  | i the gerund of <i>perdomo</i> |
| e the gerund of <i>spero</i>   | j the supine of <i>statuo</i>  |

## 2 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *militēs ad pugnandum exercent* → *the soldiers are training to fight*

- a *nautae navem ad navigandum parabant.*
- b *Quintilianus artem dicendi docebat.*
- c *ludos edendo imperator cives delectabat.*
- d *Fabius cunctando rem publicam servabat.*
- e *fugitivi ob pugnando ad arcem non pervenerunt.*
- f *Icarus timorem volandi non cepit.*
- g *Claudius in triclinium ad cenandum intravit.*
- h *princeps non est aptus regnando.*

## 3 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *caedes terribilis visu erat* → *the slaughter was terrible to see*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a <i>pueri in flumen natatum desiluerunt.</i> | e <i>militēs hibernatum ad oppidum iter fecerunt.</i> |
| b <i>fabula mirabilis dictu erat.</i>         | f <i>res facilis actu erit.</i>                       |
| c <i>puellae in agros lusum cucurrerunt.</i>  | g <i>solus per silvam tacitum ambulavi.</i>           |
| d <i>eques in templum vigilatum venit.</i>    | h <i>arcanum nefas est patefactu.</i>                 |
|   | i <i>arca difficilis apertu erat.</i>                 |

## 4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.

**e.g.** *the tribune hurried to intervene* → *tribunus intercessum festinavit*

- a The slave won his freedom by saving his master.
- b Our love of sailing is very great.
- c The bird's song was sweet to hear.
- d By hurrying quickly we arrived at the inn.
- e It is right to tell.
- f The Romans overcame the Gauls by fighting bravely.
- g Julius delights his mother by singing.
- h The monster's skin was foul to touch.

**A** The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective which is formed by adding -us -a -um to the stem of the gerund (see Unit 50 **A**). The word declines in three genders like **bonus -a -um** (see Unit 33 **C**) and must agree with whatever it refers to. It is a distinctly Latin form which is hard to parallel in English. It refers to someone or something which **ought** to experience the action of the verb.

- e.g.** first conjugation portandus -a -um → he/she/that which is to be carried  
 second conjugation habendus -a -um → he/she/that which is to be had or held  
 third conjugation agendus -a -um → he/she/that which is to be done  
 fourth conjugation audiendus -a -um → he/she/that which is to be heard

(Sometimes the third and fourth conjugation gerundives end in the older form -undus -a -um.) The gerundive's basic use is as an adjective with the sense of what could or should happen, best translated as 'capable of being' or 'worthy of being' etc., e.g. *femina laudanda est* → *The woman is worthy to be praised (of being praised)*.

**B** The gerundive of obligation

- This is used as an adjective with a forceful sense of necessity, conveying the idea of something which ought to be done, must be done or should be done, rather than simply what could be done or is worth being done, e.g. *res agenda* → *things which must be done*; *agri arandi* → *fields which must be ploughed*.
- The gerundive of obligation is used with the dative of agent by whom the thing must be done (see Unit 28 **E**), e.g. *milites, oppida capienda sunt vobis* → *soldiers, you must capture the towns* (literally: *the towns are to be captured by you*). If there is another dative in the sentence, the ablative of agent or instrument may be used, e.g. *redemptio a patre mihi danda erat* → *the ransom had to be given to me by the father*.
- If the verb is intransitive or is being used intransitively, the nominative neuter singular of the gerundive is used with the verb 'to be' in an impersonal passive construction, e.g. *laborandum est nobis* → *we must work* (literally: *it is to be worked by us*); *Romam nobis eundum est* → *we must go to Rome* (literally: *it is to be gone to Rome by us*).
- After the verbs *do* → *I give*, *curo* → *I arrange*, *trado* → *I entrust* and *mitto* → *I send*, the gerundive is used in agreement with the object to show that something is caused to be done, e.g. *theatrum consules faciendum curaverunt* → *the consuls caused a theatre to be built*.

**C** The gerundive of purpose

- This is used in the accusative after the preposition *ad* to express purpose, e.g. *ad foedus renovandum convenerunt* → *they met to renew the treaty* (literally: *for the treaty which had to be renewed*).

- The **gerundive of purpose** is sometimes found in the genitive followed either by *gratia* or *causa* → *for the sake of*, e.g. *Cicero revenit urbis servandae causa* → *Cicero returned for the sake of saving the city* (literally: *for the sake of the city which had to be saved*).
- The **gerundive of purpose** can also be used in the dative, e.g. *diem constituit liti audiendae* → *he established a day for the lawsuit to be heard* (literally: *for the lawsuit which had to be heard*).

### 1 Translate the following sentences into English.

e.g. *imperator timendo miles appropinquat* → *the soldier approaches the fearsome general*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a Cato candidatus eligendus erat.         | g ludos spectandos consules ediderunt.  |
| b uxor mea vere amanda est.               | h equos quosdam emendos heri vidi.      |
| c verba oratoris audienda sunt.           | i nodus ingens non solvendus erat.      |
| d Brutus vir laudandus apud Romanos erat. | j coquus optimus cenam edendam parabat. |
| e multas gemmas habendas congregabam.     |   |
| f musca minima non videnda est.           |   |

### 2 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain gerundives of obligation.

e.g. *imperator vias faciendas curavit* → *the emperor caused roads to be built*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a argumentum quod erat demonstrandum prae bui. | f parentes semper nobis honorandi sunt.   |
| b nunc vobis tacendum est.                     | g Claudius aquaeductum faciendum curavit. |
| c Carthago delenda est.                        | h hostes vobis non timendi sunt.          |
| d Tarpeiam puniendam cives de saxo deiecerunt. | i nihil dixi de consilio celando.         |
| e cavendum est tibi.                           | j nunc est bibendum.                      |

### 3 Translate the following sentences into English. They contain gerundives of purpose.

e.g. *ad aurum petendum in sepulcrum intraverunt* → *they entered the tomb to look for gold*

- |   |
|---|
| a ad magistratus eligendos cives in foro congregabant.        |
| b rhetorem Graecum ad filium educandum comparavi.             |
| c pueri in tecta ascenderunt pompae videndae causa.           |
| d Plinius otium quaerebat librorum scribendorum gratia.       |
| e venatores in montes ad feras capiendas iter fecerunt.       |
| f athleta celerim ad praemium petendum.                       |
| g Sulla dictaturam deposuit legum servandarum causa.          |
| h donum misimus matri delectandae.                            |
| i Spartacus rebellavit servorum liberandorum causa.           |
| j artifex diligenter ad statuam pulchram faciendam laborabat. |

**A** The **subjunctive mood** is used to denote an action that is desired, willed, anticipated, conditional or prospective. As a result it is normally found in subordinate clauses rather than as a main verb (see Unit 63). The meaning and usage of the subjunctive are explained in Unit 54 and under the relevant constructions. The mood has no regular future or future perfect tenses. Instead the future participle (see Unit 44 **D**) is used with the present or imperfect subjunctive of the verb 'to be' (see Unit 58 **A**).

**B** The **present subjunctive** is formed from the present stem. The letter -e- comes before the personal endings -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -unt in the first conjugation while the letter -a- comes before them in the second, third and fourth conjugations.

- Present active tense

	First conjugation	Second conjugation	Third conjugation	Fourth conjugation
1st person singular	portem	habeam	agam	audiam
2nd person singular	portes	habeas	agas	audias
3rd person singular	portet	habeat	agat	audiat
1st person plural	portemus	habeamus	agamus	audiamus
2nd person plural	portetis	habeatis	agatis	audiat
3rd person plural	portent	habeant	agant	audiant

- The present passive is formed as normal (see Unit 45 **C**):

- Present passive tense

	First conjugation	Second conjugation	Third conjugation	Fourth conjugation
1st person singular	porter	habear	agar	audiar
2nd person singular	porteris	habearis	agaris	audiaris
3rd person singular	portetur	habeatur	agatur	audiatur
1st person plural	portemur	habeamur	agamur	audiamur
2nd person plural	portemini	habeamini	agamini	audiamini
3rd person plural	portentur	habeantur	agantur	audiantur

**C** The **imperfect subjunctive** is formed by taking the **present infinitive** (second principal part) and adding the personal endings -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -unt:

- Imperfect active tense

	First conjugation	Second conjugation	Third conjugation	Fourth conjugation
1st person singular	portarem	haberem	agerem	audirem
2nd person singular	portares	haberēs	ageres	audires
3rd person singular	portaret	haberet	ageret	audiret
1st person plural	portaremus	haberemus	ageremus	audiremus
2nd person plural	portaretis	haberetis	ageretis	audiretis
3rd person plural	portarent	haberent	agerent	audirent



- The imperfect passive is formed as normal (see Unit 45 **C**):

- Imperfect passive tense

	First conjugation	Second conjugation	Third conjugation	Fourth conjugation
1st person singular	portarer	haberer	agerer	audirer
2nd person singular	portareris	habereris	agereris	audireris
3rd person singular	portaretur	haberetur	ageretur	audiretur
1st person plural	portaremur	haberemur	ageremur	audiremur
2nd person plural	portaremini	haberemini	ageremini	audiremini
3rd person plural	portarentur	haberentur	agerentur	audirentur

**NB** There is an alternative ending **-re** for **-ris** for the 2nd person singular in the present and imperfect passive subjunctive.

**1** Write out the present subjunctives, active or passive, of the following verbs.

**e.g.** the present subjunctive passive of **sedeo** → **sedear, sedearis, sedeatur, sedeamur, sedeamini, sedeantur**

- the present subjunctive passive of **facio**
- the present subjunctive active of **seco**
- the present subjunctive active of **rego**
- the present subjunctive passive of **teneo**
- the present subjunctive active of **moveo**
- the present subjunctive passive of **capio**
- the present subjunctive passive of **aperio**
- the present subjunctive active of **cedo**
- the present subjunctive active of **amo**
- the present subjunctive passive of **venio**

**2** Write out the imperfect subjunctives, active or passive, of the following verbs.

**e.g.** The imperfect subjunctive active of **moneo** → **monerem, moneres, moneret, moneremus, moneretis, monerent**

- the imperfect subjunctive passive of **trado**
- the imperfect subjunctive active of **video**
- the imperfect subjunctive passive of **rogo**
- the imperfect subjunctive active of **verto**
- the imperfect subjunctive active of **iacio**
- the imperfect subjunctive passive of **sentio**
- the imperfect subjunctive active of **iubeo**
- the imperfect subjunctive passive of **duco**
- the imperfect subjunctive passive of **sto**
- the imperfect subjunctive active of **frango**

**A** The perfect subjunctive active is formed by adding -erim, -eris, -erit, -erimus, -eritis, -erint to the perfect stem. Be careful not to confuse these with some of the endings of the indicative future perfect active (see Unit 11 **B**). The forms for the different conjugations, from *porto* → *carry*, *habeo* → *have*, *ago* → *do* and *audio* → *hear* are as follows:

	First conjugation	Second conjugation	Third conjugation	Fourth conjugation
1st person singular	portaverim	habuerim	egerim	audiverim
2nd person singular	portaveris	habueris	egeris	audiveris
3rd person singular	portaverit	habuerit	egerit	audiverit
1st person plural	portaverimus	habuerimus	egerimus	audiverimus
2nd person plural	portaveritis	habueritis	egeritis	audiveritis
3rd person plural	portaverint	habuerint	egerint	audiverint

**B** The perfect subjunctive passive is formed by a combination of the perfect passive participle (see Unit 44 **C**) and the present subjunctive tense of *to be* (see Unit 58 **A**). Remember that the participle agrees in number, gender and case with the noun it describes.

	First conjugation	Second conjugation	Third conjugation	Fourth conjugation
1st person singular	portatus sim	habitus sim	actus sim	auditus sim
2nd person singular	portatus sis	habitus sis	actus sis	auditus sis
3rd person singular	portatus sit	habitus sit	actus sit	auditus sit
1st person plural	portati simus	habiti simus	acti simus	auditi simus
2nd person plural	portati sitis	habiti sitis	acti sitis	auditi sitis
3rd person plural	portati sint	habiti sint	acti sint	auditi sint

**C** The pluperfect subjunctive active is formed by adding -issem, -isses, -isset, -issemus, -issetis, -issent to the perfect stem.

	First conjugation	Second conjugation	Third conjugation	Fourth conjugation
1st person singular	portavissem	habuissem	egissem	audivissem
2nd person singular	portavisses	habuisses	egisses	audivisses
3rd person singular	portavisset	habuisset	egisset	audivisset
1st person plural	portavissemus	habuissemus	egissemus	audivissemus
2nd person plural	portavissetis	habuissetis	egissetis	audivissetis
3rd person plural	portavissent	habuissent	egissent	audivissent

**D** The pluperfect subjunctive passive is formed by a combination of the perfect passive participle (see Unit 44 **C**) and the imperfect subjunctive tense of *to be* (see Unit 58 **A**). Remember that the participle agrees in number, gender and case with the noun it describes.

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctives cannot really be translated into English in isolation. They are used in various constructions (see Unit 54).

	First conjugation	Second conjugation	Third conjugation	Fourth conjugation
1st person singular	portatus essem	habitus essem	actus essem	auditus essem
2nd person singular	portatus esses	habitus esses	actus esses	auditus esses
3rd person singular	portatus esset	habitus esset	actus esset	auditus esset
1st person plural	portati essemus	habiti essemus	acti essemus	auditi essemus
2nd person plural	portati essetis	habiti essetis	acti essetis	auditi essetis
3rd person plural	portati essent	habiti essent	acti essent	auditi essent

**1 Write out the perfect subjunctives, active or passive, of the following verbs.**

**e.g.** the perfect subjunctive active of *gero* → *gesserim, gesseris, gesserit, gesserimus, gesseritis, gesserint*

- a the perfect subjunctive passive of *rideo*
- b the perfect subjunctive active of *ludo*
- c the perfect subjunctive active of *parco*
- d the perfect subjunctive passive of *cupio*
- e the perfect subjunctive active of *dormio*
- f the perfect subjunctive passive of *pugno*
- g the perfect subjunctive passive of *mitto*
- h the perfect subjunctive active of *suadeo*
- i the perfect subjunctive passive of *paro*
- j the perfect subjunctive active of *reperio*

**2 Write out the pluperfect subjunctives, active or passive, of the following verbs.**

**e.g.** the pluperfect subjunctive active of *ruo* → *ruissem, ruiesses, ruisset, ruissemus, ruissetis, ruisissent*

- a the pluperfect subjunctive passive of *relinquo*
- b the pluperfect subjunctive active of *deleo*
- c the pluperfect subjunctive passive of *laboro*
- d the pluperfect subjunctive active of *custodio*
- e the pluperfect subjunctive active of *accipio*
- f the pluperfect subjunctive passive of *pello*
- g the pluperfect subjunctive active of *dico*
- h the pluperfect subjunctive passive of *doceo*
- i the pluperfect subjunctive active of *claudio*
- j the pluperfect subjunctive passive of *sepelio*

The subjunctive mood expresses possibility. We do not often use it in English but it exists (e.g. if I were you). When translating subjunctives it is almost always necessary to use accompanying auxiliary verbs such as *would*, *should* or *might*.

**A** In main clauses the subjunctive is not common but when it is found it expresses what is desired or regarded as possible and appears as one of the following types.

- The **jussive subjunctive** (negative: *ne*) in the 2nd and 3rd person is almost a command. Present and perfect tenses are used, e.g. *caveat emptor* → *let the buyer beware*; *ne transieris flumen* → *do not cross the river*; *cura ne me vexes* → *take care you do not annoy me*; *petas aurum* → (please) *seek the gold*.
- The **hortative subjunctive** (negative: *ne*) in the 1st person expresses encouragement. The present tense is used, e.g. *meliora sequamur* → *let us seek better things*.
- The **concessive subjunctive** (negative: *ne*) expresses a concession such as 'granted that' or 'supposing that'. Present or perfect tenses are used, e.g. *celet pecuniam Titus* → *supposing that Titus is hiding the money*.
- The **deliberative subjunctive** (negative: *non*) is used for questions in which what ought to be done is uncertain. Present and imperfect tenses are used, e.g. *quid faciam?* → *what am I to do?*, *quid agerem?* → *what should I have done?*
- The **optative subjunctive** (negative: *ne*) expresses wishes. The present and perfect express a wish for the future, the imperfect a wish that something were so now and the pluperfect a wish that something had been so in the past. They are often introduced by *utinam* → *would that / if only*, e.g. *di te servent* → *may the gods preserve you*; *utinam haec diceret* → *if only you were saying this (now)*; *utinam id fecissem* → *would that I had done it*.
- The **potential subjunctive** (negative: *non*) expresses something which has the potential to happen and may depend upon a condition, although that condition is not always present. The present and perfect tenses are used with reference to the present and future; the imperfect with reference to the past, e.g. *quis audeat hoc facere?* → *who would dare to do this?* *eum fortem esse putares* → *you would have thought him to be brave*. *velim* → *I would like*, *nolim* → *I would not like* and *malim* → *I would prefer*, are common examples of this subjunctive.

**B** In subordinate clauses (see Unit 63) the subjunctive is more common and is found:

- In expressions of desire or will or condition which depend on another sentence, e.g. in **indirect commands** (see Unit 79) *rogo te ut venias* → *I ask you to come*.
- As the **prospective subjunctive** to represent something as anticipated rather than as a fact, e.g. *manebimus dum periculum augeat?* → *shall we remain until the danger may increase?*

- With its meaning so weak that it reports actual facts, e.g. in result clauses (see Unit 67) *totiens rogavit ut adsentirem* → *he asked me so many times that I consented*.
- In indirect speech the verbs of subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive even if they were indicative in direct speech, except that in *dum* (→ *until*) clauses in indirect speech the present indicative is kept.

The subjunctives in these exercises are in main clauses. The uses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses is tested under each of the subordinate constructions.

**1** Translate the following into English. The subjunctives are jussive or hortative.

e.g. *ne te mater inveniat* → *do not let mother find you*

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| a portae aperiantur o custodes.           | e quam laetissime vivamus!    |
| b omnia vincit amor et nos cedamus amori. | f aprum venatores caveant.    |
| c cives, imperatorem victorem salutemus!  | g ne pugnetis in horto pueri. |
| d ne canes excitaveris.                   | h nunc diligenter laboremus.  |
|   | i appropinquent legati.       |
|   | j Ciceronem audiamus.         |

**2** Translate the following into English. The subjunctives are concessive or deliberative.

e.g. *quotiens haec verba dicam?* → *how often should I say these words?*

- |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a quo nunc veniamus?            | f Caesarem timuerit Cassius.     |
| b necaverit maritum Clodia.     | g ubi villam aedificem?          |
| c habitet monstrum in spelunca. | h victa sit Britannia a Romanis. |
| d quomodo tibi subvenirem?      | i cur tot annos laborem?         |
| e cur vobis faveamus?           | j cui libros meos legem?         |

**3** Translate the following into English. The subjunctives are optative or potential.

e.g. *absit omen* → *may the (bad) omen be gone*

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| a vivat rex!                       | g utinam flumen Caesar ne transiisset. |
| b cras velim te visitare.          | h quis Catilinam crederet?             |
| c floreat civitas!                 | i utinam Cato nunc viveret.            |
| d heri Brutum ridentem videres.    | j malim equitare potius quam ambulare. |
| e nolim umbram in tenebris videre. |  |
| f cadent inimici!                  |  |

**4** Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *let the contest be started* → *certamen excitetur*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a Who would love the miser?              | e Would that you (s.) had not killed the goose. |
| b Let us not walk to the shore.          | f Why would you (s.) have hidden the book?      |
| c May you (s.) always sing beautifully.  | g Let the general himself lead us.              |
| d Do not let the old man hurt the horse. | h Let us depart from the forum.                 |

**A** Deponent verbs are passive in form but active in meaning. There is no equivalent to this phenomenon in English. Just as for normal active verbs, you can tell which conjugation they belong to by examining their **present infinitive** ending (the second principal part: see Unit 2 **E**). In dictionaries only their first three principal parts are given.

- Deponent verbs of the first conjugation are characterized by a present infinitive ending **-ari**, e.g. **conor conari conatus sum** → *try*.
- Deponent verbs of the second conjugation are characterized by a present infinitive ending **-eri**, e.g. **confiteor confiteri confessus sum** → *confess, acknowledge*.
- Deponent verbs of the third conjugation are characterized by a present infinitive ending **-i**, e.g. **loquor loqui locutus sum** → *speak*.
- Deponent verbs of the fourth conjugation are characterized by a present infinitive ending **-iri**, e.g. **mentior mentiri mentitus sum** → *tell lies*.

**B** Although the indicative, subjunctive and imperative moods and perfect participles of deponent verbs are passive in form and active in meaning, their **present and future participles, future infinitives, supines and gerunds** are active in form and meaning, as in normal verbs. The **gerundives** of deponent verbs are passive in form and meaning.

**C** Sample forms for the first conjugation verb **conor -ari -atus sum** → *try* are:

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
present	conor	coner	conare	conari	conans
future	conabor	—	—	conaturus esse	conaturus
imperfect	conabar	conarer	—	—	—
perfect	conatus sum	conatus sim	—	conatus esse	conatus
future perfect	conatus ero	—	—	—	—
pluperfect	conatus eram	conatus essem	—	—	—
Gerund: conandum Gerundive: conandus -a -um Supine: conatum					

**D** Some important deponent verbs are followed by the ablative:

e.g. **utor uti usus sum** → *use, employ, enjoy*  
**abutor abuti abusus sum** → *use up, exhaust*  
**frutor frui fructus sum** → *enjoy, have the use of*  
**fungor fungi functus sum** → *perform, discharge*  
**vescor vesci** (no perfect) → *feed on, enjoy*  
**potior potiri potitus sum** → *take possession of*

**E** Semi-deponent verbs are those which have an active present, imperfect and future, but a passive perfect, pluperfect and future perfect. There are not many but they are common:

Second conjugation: **audeo audere ausus sum** → *dare*; **gaudeo gaudere gavisus sum** → *rejoice*; **soleo solere solitus sum** → *be accustomed to*.

Third conjugation: **fido fidere fisis sum** → *trust* (+ dative); **confido** → *trust*; **diffido** → *mistrust*.

### 1 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *Romani imperio maximo potiti erant* → *the Romans had acquired a very great empire*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a philosophi de natura sapientiae rebantur. | f mane domo proficiscemur.               |
| b nolite morari liberi.                     | g fabri pontem experiuntur.              |
| c athletas hortemur cives!                  | h equi per flumen trepide gressi sunt.   |
| d nihil peius quam mortem patiemur.         | i puellae laete pompam secutae sunt.     |
| e rex anno sexagesimo suo mortuus est.      | j Galli per portas Romae ingressi erant. |

### 2 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *saxa de monte paulatim labebantur* → *rocks were gradually slipping down the mountain*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a hamadryades de arboribus ortae sunt.       | f mercator domum locupletem nactus est.    |
| b cras Romani Graecos aggredientur.          | g servi horto domini benigni fruebantur.   |
| c gaudeamus igitur, iuvenes dum sumus!       | h hieme agricola faeno abusus erat.        |
| d puella quattuordecim annos nata est.       | i post cladem imperator valde irascebatur. |
| e ille artifex modo marmore optimo utebatur. | j consules officio optime fungentur.       |

### 3 Translate the following sentences into English.

**e.g.** *numquam mortuorum obliviscemur* → *we shall never be forgetful of the dead*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a sol mox coorietur.                    | f olim puellae ad fontem mane convenire solitae erant. |
| b vaccae herbis vescuntur.              | g avarus mihi numquam fisus est.                       |
| c femina Caesari contradicere ausa est. | h omnes pueri taurum verentur.                         |
| d noli umquam mentiri mi fili.          | i custodes de captivis non loquentur.                  |
| e percussores senem adorti sunt.        | j cur iuvenes minaris o iudex?                         |

### 4 Translate the following sentences into Latin. Use deponent verbs.

**e.g.** *the citizens do not seem happy* → *cives non laeti videntur*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a Why has the magistrate lied about the money? | g The enemy are advancing slowly across the plain. |
| b Have you (s.) obtained the books?            | h You (pl.) are not accustomed to work carefully.  |
| c Do not fear the dark, my son.                | i The citizens have always trusted the orator.     |
| d I have not forgotten the animals.            | j The captives will not come out from the gaol.    |
| e Let us hunt the huge stag.                   |  |
| f Tomorrow we shall talk about the plan.       |  |

**Impersonal verbs** do not have a personal subject and usually have only a 3rd person singular in each tense, an infinitive and a gerund. As in English their subject is the pronoun 'it', e.g. *It is raining*. The most common impersonal constructions are as follows.

**A** Some are used alone to express changes of weather or time, e.g. *fulgurat* → *it lightens*, *ningit* → *it snows*, *pluit* → *it rains*, *tonat* → *it thunders*, *lucescit* → *it dawns*, *vesperascit* → *it grows late*.

**B** Some are followed by the accusative of person and the infinitive of action, e.g. *deceat* → *it is becoming*, *dedecet* → *it is unbecoming*, *iuvat* → *it delights*, *fallit* → *it escapes one's notice*, *fugit* → *it escapes one's notice*, *praeterit* → *it passes one by*, *oportet* → *it behoves one* (one ought, should), e.g. *dedecet vos pugnare* → *it is unbecoming for you to fight*.

**C** Some take a dative (sometimes with an infinitive), e.g. *libet* → *it pleases*, *licet* → *it is allowed*, *liquet* → *it is clear*, *contingit* → *it befalls*, *convenit* → *it suits*, *evenit* → *it turns out*, *expedit* → *it is expedient*, *placet* → *it pleases*, *seems good*, *videtur* → *it seems* (good), *it is decided*, e.g. *licet nobis discedere* → *we are allowed to leave* (*it is permitted for us to leave*).

**D** Some take accusative of the person and genitive of cause or infinitive of action, e.g. *miseret* → *it moves to pity* (and *miseritum est*), *piget* → *it vexes* (and *pigitum est*), *paenitet* → *it repents*, *pudet* → *it shames* (and *puditum est*), *taedet* → *it wearies* (and *pertaesum est*), e.g. *paenitet me erroris* → *I repent of my mistake* (*it makes me repent of my mistake*).

**E** Some are followed by ad plus the accusative, for example *pertinet* → *it concerns*, *attinet* → *it concerns*, *it belongs*, e.g. *nihil ad me attinet* → *it concerns me in no respect*.

**F** The verb *refert* → *it concerns*, *it matters* is used with the feminine singular ablative of the possessive pronouns *mea*, *tua* etc. (see Unit 39 **C**) which is to be imagined as agreeing with the ablative singular *re* → *thing*, contained in the verb *refert*. So *mea refert* → *it bears on my business*. By some oddity, the verb *interest* → *it concerns*, *it is of importance*, takes the same construction. These verbs are usually followed by an accusative and infinitive, although *interest* also takes the genitive of the person concerned in the case of nouns and 3rd person pronouns, e.g. *mea refert vos effugere* → *it concerns me that you escape*.

**G** *Est* → *it is* can be used in an impersonal sense with adjectives and an infinitive, e.g. *difficile est montem ascendere* → *it is difficult to climb the mountain*. *opus est* → *there is need of* takes the dative of person in need and ablative of what is needed, e.g. *opus est mihi trabe* → *I need a plank* (*there is need to me of a plank*).

**H** The verbs *potest* → *it is possible*, *coepit* → *it begins*, *solet* → *it is customary*, *debet* → *it ought* and *desinet* → *it stops* are also used with an infinitive, e.g. *potest pontem transire* → *it is possible to cross the bridge*.

**I** Some other verbs also have a special impersonal meaning in their 3rd person, e.g. *accedit* → *it is added*, *accidit* → *it happens*, *apparet* → *it is obvious*, *constat* → *it is agreed*, *delectat* → *it charms* and *restat* → *it remains*.



**1** The existence of the passive of intransitive verbs seems illogical in English as intransitive verbs do not take a direct object. However, in Latin passive intransitive verbs can be used in the 3rd person singular in an impersonal construction, e.g. *Romam a Bruto ventum est* → (literally) *it was gone to Rome by Brutus*. We cannot, of course, translate this literally into English and so we say 'Brutus went to Rome'. In the Latin the subject of the intransitive verb (Brutus) has become the agent.

Compare this with *pugnatum est in foro* → (literally) *it was fought in the forum*, i.e. *there was a fight in the forum*. In this sentence the subject is omitted altogether.

Likewise, *ventum est in forum* → (literally) *it was gone into the forum*, must be translated according to the context, e.g. *we* (or *they* etc.) *went into the forum*. We find this construction with verbs taking the dative (see Unit 27 **A**), e.g. *ab oratore persuadetur omnibus civibus* → *the speaker persuades all the citizens* (literally: *it is persuaded to all citizens by the speaker*).

Intransitive verbs which take an ablative are all deponent and their gerundives are used impersonally, e.g. *omnibus voluptatibus fruendum est* → *we should enjoy all pleasures* (literally: *enjoyment should be taken of all pleasures*).

## **1 Translate the following sentences into English.**

e.g. *oportet vos captivos liberare* → *you ought to set the prisoners free*

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| a ecce pluit!                            | f non pudet furem impietatis.        |
| b decet Romanos pacem conservare.        | g pueris non placet in horto ludere. |
| c hodie mihi convenit domi manere.       | h iam vesperscat.                    |
| d iuvabit te cantorem audire.            | i taedet nos laboris.                |
| e non licet vobis in triclinium intrare. | j sapienti convenit tacere.          |

## **2 Translate the following sentences into English.**

e.g. *dulce et decorum est pro patria mori* → *it is sweet and fitting to die for one's country*

- |                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a optimo consilio utendum est.        | e a nostris processum est ad hostes. |
| b facile est in montibus te celare.   | f non potest Germanis resistere.     |
| c ad Graeciam a Cassio navigatum est. | g opus erat nautis rudentibus.       |
| d necesse est canem ferocem vincere.  | h nostra refert eum servari.         |
|                                       | i solet mane patronum salutare.      |

## **3 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

e.g. *we regret our carelessness* → *paenitet nos negligentiae*

- |                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a You (pl.) will need a ship.       | d It concerns me that we learn.       |
| b It snowed yesterday.              | e It is possible to see the treetops. |
| c It is unbecoming for us to yield. | f The women went to the theatre.      |
|                                     | g It will soon grow light.            |

**Defective verbs are those from which some forms are absent.**

**A** Odi odisse → *I hate* and meminī meminisse → *I remember* have no present, future or imperfect.

• Indicative perfect (present in meaning)

1st person singular	odi → I hate	meminī → I remember
2nd person singular	odisti	meministi
3rd person singular	odit	meminit
1st person plural	odimus	meminimus
2nd person plural	odistis	meministis
3rd person plural	oderunt	meminerunt

• Indicative pluperfect (imperfect in meaning)

1st person singular	oderam → I hated	memineram → I remembered
2nd person singular	oderas	memineras
3rd person singular	oderat	meminerat
1st person plural	oderamus	memineramus
2nd person plural	oderatis	memineratis
3rd person plural	oderant	meminerant

• Indicative future perfect (future in meaning)

1st person singular	oderō → I shall hate	meminero → I shall remember
2nd person singular	oderis	memineris
3rd person singular	oderit	meminerit
1st person plural	oderimus	meminerimus
2nd person plural	oderitis	memineritis
3rd person plural	oderint	meminerint

• Subjunctive perfect

1st person singular	oderim	meminerim
2nd person singular	oderis	memineris
3rd person singular	oderit	meminerit
1st person plural	oderimus	meminerimus
2nd person plural	oderitis	memineritis
3rd person plural	oderint	meminerint

• Subjunctive pluperfect

1st person singular	odissem	meminissem
2nd person singular	odisses	meminisses
3rd person singular	odisset	meminisset
1st person plural	odissemus	meminissemus
2nd person plural	odissetis	meminissetis
3rd person plural	odissent	meminissent

• Perfect infinitive: **odisse** → *to hate*; perfect participle: **osus -a -um** → *hating* (active); future participle: **osurus -a -um** → *about to hate*; imperative: —

• Perfect infinitive: **meminisse** → *to remember*; perfect participle: —; future participle: —; imperative: **memento** (s.) **mementote** (pl.) → *remember*

**B** **Coepi coepisse** → *I have begun* has no present, future or imperfect.

- |                     | Perfect                     | Pluperfect                    |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1st person singular | coepi → <i>I have begun</i> | coeperam → <i>I had begun</i> |
| 2nd person singular | coepisti                    | coeperas                      |
| 3rd person singular | coepit                      | coeperat                      |
| 1st person plural   | coepimus                    | coeperamus                    |
| 2nd person plural   | coepistis                   | coeperatis                    |
| 3rd person plural   | coeperunt                   | coeperant                     |
- 
- | Indicative          | Future perfect                      |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1st person singular | coepero → <i>I shall have begun</i> |
| 2nd person singular | coeperis                            |
| 3rd person singular | coeperit                            |
| 1st person plural   | coeperimus                          |
| 2nd person plural   | coeperitis                          |
| 3rd person plural   | coeperint                           |
- 
- |                     | Perfect    | Pluperfect  |
|---------------------|------------|-------------|
| 1st person singular | coeperim   | coepissem   |
| 2nd person singular | coeperis   | coepisses   |
| 3rd person singular | coeperit   | coepisset   |
| 1st person plural   | coeperimus | coepissemus |
| 2nd person plural   | coeperitis | coepissetis |
| 3rd person plural   | coeperint  | coepissent  |
- Perfect infinitive: **coepisse** → *to have begun*; perfect participle: **coeptus -a -um** → *begun*; future participle: **coepturus -a -um** → *about to begin*

**G** **Aio** → *say*, **inquam** → *say* and **for fari fatus sum** (deponent) → *speak* have few forms.

- aio: present indicative: aio, ais, ait, — — aiunt  
imperfect: aiebam, aiebas, aiebat, aiebamus, aiebatis, aiebant  
present subjunctive: aiat, aiant; participle: aiens, aientis
- inquam: present: inquam, inquis, inquit, inquam, inquit, inquit, inquit  
imperfect: — — inquiebat, — — inquiebant; future: —  
inquies, inquiet  
perfect: — — inquisti, inquit; imperative: inque, inquito
- for: present: fatur; future: fabor, fabitur; imperative: fare;  
present participle: fantem (acc.); perfect participle: fatus;  
gerund: fandus, fandus; gerundive: fandus -a -um

**Q** The verbs **nosco noscere novi notum** and its compound **cognosco cognoscere cognovi cognitum** both mean 'get to know'. Like **odi** and **memini** their perfect tenses have a present meaning. So **novi** → *I have got to know* and, therefore, *I know*; **novero** → *I shall know*; **noveram** (often syncopated to **noram**) → *I knew*; **novisse** (or **nosse**) → *to know*; **notus** → *known*.

**U** **Queo quire quivi quitum** → *I am able* and **nequeo** → *I am unable* are defective and, where tenses exist, conjugate like compounds of **eo** (see Unit 61 **A**): **queo, quis, quit, quimus, quitis, queunt**. (As does the verb **venio venire venii venitum** → *be sold, be on sale*, which has an active form but a passive meaning.)

**A** The finite indicative tenses of the irregular verb *sum esse fui* → *to be*, are given in Unit 12. The other forms are as follows:

Subjunctive	Present	Imperfect
1st person singular	sim	essem
2nd person singular	sis	essem
3rd person singular	sit	esset
1st person plural	simus	essemus
2nd person plural	sitis	essetis
3rd person plural	sint	essent
Subjunctive	Perfect	Pluperfect
1st person singular	fuerim	fuissem
2nd person singular	fueris	fuisset
3rd person singular	fuerit	fuisset
1st person plural	fuerimus	fuissemus
2nd person plural	fueritis	fuissetis
3rd person plural	fuerint	fuisissent

Alternative forms exist in the present subjunctive:

1st person singular	<b>siem or fuam</b>
2nd person singular	<b>sies or fuas</b>
3rd person singular	<b>siet or fuat</b>
1st person plural	—
2nd person plural	—
3rd person plural	<b>sient or fuant</b>

and in the imperfect subjunctive:

1st person singular	<b>forem</b>
2nd person singular	<b>fores</b>
3rd person singular	<b>foret</b>
1st person plural	—
2nd person plural	—
3rd person plural	<b>forent</b>

Imperative: 2nd person: *es* or *esto* (s.) *este* or *estote* (pl.); 3rd person: *esto* (s.) *sunto* (pl.)

Infinitives: present: *esse*; perfect: *fuisse*; future: *futurus esse*

Participles: future: *futurus -a -um* or *fore* (no present or perfect). No gerund or supine.

**B** The compounds of *sum* conjugate as it does:

*absum* → *I am absent*, *adsum* → *I am present*, *desum* → *I am wanting*, *insum* → *I am in*, *intersum* → *I am among*, *obsum* → *I hinder*, *praesum* → *I am in charge of*, *prosum* → *I am of use*, *subsum* → *I am under* and *supersum* → *I survive*.

In *prosum* the letter *d* appears between the *o* and *e*, as in *prodestis*.

These compounds have active participles like *praesens* → *in charge*, *absens* → *absent*.

☐ **Possum posse potui** → *I can* is a shortened compound of *potens sum* → *I am able*.

Indicative	Present	Future
1st person singular	possum	potero
2nd person singular	potes	poteris
3rd person singular	potest	poterit
1st person plural	possumus	poterimus
2nd person plural	potestis	poteritis
3rd person plural	possunt	poterunt
Indicative	Imperfect	Perfect
1st person singular	poteram	potui
2nd person singular	poteras	potuisti
3rd person singular	poterat	potuit
1st person plural	poteramus	potuimus
2nd person plural	poteratis	potuistis
3rd person plural	poterant	potuerunt
Indicative	Future perfect	Pluperfect
1st person singular	potuero	potueram
2nd person singular	potueris	potueras
3rd person singular	potuerit	potuerat
1st person plural	potuerimus	potueramus
2nd person plural	potueritis	potueratis
3rd person plural	potuerint	potuerant
Subjunctive	Present	Imperfect
1st person singular	possim	possem
2nd person singular	possis	posses
3rd person singular	possit	posset
1st person plural	possimus	possemus
2nd person plural	possitis	possetis
3rd person plural	possint	possent
Subjunctive	Perfect	Pluperfect
1st person singular	potuerim	potuissem
2nd person singular	potueris	potuisses
3rd person singular	potuerit	potuisset
1st person plural	potuerimus	potuissemus
2nd person plural	potueritis	potuissetis
3rd person plural	potuerint	potuissent

Infinitives: present: *posse*; perfect: *potuisse*. The participle *potens* is used only as an adjective and there are no imperatives, gerund, gerundive or supine.

**A** *Volo velle volui* → *wish, want*. This verb takes the prolativ infinitive (see Unit 48 **A**).

<b>Indicative</b>		<b>Present</b>	<b>Future</b>
1st person singular		volo	volam
2nd person singular		vis	voles
3rd person singular		vult	volet
1st person plural		volumus	volemus
2nd person plural		vultis	voletis
3rd person plural		volunt	volent
<b>Indicative</b>		<b>Imperfect</b>	<b>Perfect</b>
1st person singular		volebam	volui
2nd person singular		volebas	voluisti
3rd person singular		volebat	voluit
1st person plural		volebamus	voluimus
2nd person plural		volebatis	voluistis
3rd person plural		volebant	voluerunt
<b>Indicative</b>		<b>Future perfect</b>	<b>Pluperfect</b>
1st person singular		volueris	volueras
3rd person singular		voluerit	voluerat
1st person plural		voluerimus	volueramus
2nd person plural		volueritis	volueratis
3rd person plural		voluerint	voluerant
<b>Subjunctive</b>		<b>Present</b>	<b>Imperfect</b>
1st person singular		velim	vellem
2nd person singular		velis	velles
3rd person singular		velit	vellet
1st person plural		velimus	vellemus
2nd person plural		velitis	velletis
3rd person plural		velint	vellent
<b>Subjunctive</b>		<b>Perfect</b>	<b>Pluperfect</b>
1st person singular		voluerim	voluissem
2nd person singular		volueris	voluisses
3rd person singular		voluerit	voluisset
1st person plural		voluerimus	voluissemus
2nd person plural		volueritis	voluissetis
3rd person plural		voluerint	voluissent

Infinitives: present: **velle**; perfect: **voluisse**

Present participle: **volens**

Gerund: **volendum** (no imperatives or gerundive)

**B** Nolo nolle nolui → *be unwilling* is a compound of ne volo → *I do not want*. This verb takes the prolativ infinitive (see Unit 48 **A**).

Indicative		Present	Future
1st person singular		nolo	nolam
2nd person singular		non vis	noles
3rd person singular		non vult	nollet
1st person plural		nolumus	nolemus
2nd person plural		non vultis	noletis
3rd person plural		nolunt	nolent
Indicative		Imperfect	Perfect
1st person singular		nolebam	nolui
2nd person singular		nolebas	noluisti
3rd person singular		nolebat	noluit
1st person plural		nolebamus	noluimus
2nd person plural		nolebatis	nolulistis
3rd person plural		nolebant	noluerunt
Indicative		Future perfect	Pluperfect
1st person singular		noluerō	nolueram
2nd person singular		nolueris	nolueras
3rd person singular		noluerit	noluerat
1st person plural		noluerimus	nolueramus
2nd person plural		nolueritis	nolueratis
3rd person plural		noluerint	noluerant
Subjunctive		Present	Imperfect
1st person singular		nolim	nollem
2nd person singular		nolis	nolles
3rd person singular		nolit	nollet
1st person plural		nolimus	nollemus
2nd person plural		nolitis	nolletis
3rd person plural		nolint	nollent
Subjunctive		Perfect	Pluperfect
1st person singular		noluerim	noluissem
2nd person singular		nolueris	noluisset
3rd person singular		noluerit	noluisset
1st person plural		noluerimus	noluissemus
2nd person plural		nolueritis	noluissetis
3rd person plural		noluerint	noluisissent

Imperatives: 2nd person: noli or nolito (s.) nolite or nolitote (pl.)

3rd person: nolito (s.) nolunto (pl.)

Infinitives: present: nolle, perfect: noluisse

Present participle: nolens

Gerund: nolendum (no gerundive or supine)

**A** *Malo malle malui* → *prefer* is a compound of *magis volo* → *I wish more*. It takes the prolativ infinitive (see Unit 48 **A**).

Indicative		Present	Future
1st person singular		malo	malam
2nd person singular		mavis	males
3rd person singular		mavult	malet
1st person plural		malumus	malemus
2nd person plural		mavultis	maletis
3rd person plural		malunt	malent
Indicative		Imperfect	Perfect
1st person singular		malebam	malui
2nd person singular		malebas	maluisti
3rd person singular		malebat	maluit
1st person plural		malebamus	maluimus
2nd person plural		malebatis	maluistis
3rd person plural		malebant	maluerunt
Indicative		Future perfect	Pluperfect
1st person singular		maluero	malueram
2nd person singular		malueris	malueras
3rd person singular		maluerit	maluerat
1st person plural		maluerimus	malueramus
2nd person plural		malueritis	malueratis
3rd person plural		maluerint	maluerant
Subjunctive		Present	Imperfect
1st person singular		malim	mallem
2nd person singular		malis	malles
3rd person singular		malit	mallet
1st person plural		malimus	mallemus
2nd person plural		malitis	malletis
3rd person plural		malint	mallent
Subjunctive		Perfect	Pluperfect
1st person singular		maluerim	maluissem
2nd person singular		malueris	maluisses
3rd person singular		maluerit	maluisset
1st person plural		maluerimus	maluissemus
2nd person plural		malueritis	maluissetis
3rd person plural		maluerint	maluissent

Infinitives: present: **malle**, perfect: **maluisse**

Gerundive: **malendum** (no participles or imperatives)



**B** *Fio fieri factus sum* → *become, be made* is an irregular defective verb. When it means ‘be made’, the verb is active in form but passive in meaning and must be used as the passive of *facio facere feci factum* → *make*, which supplies the perfect tense *factus sum* → *I have been made*, the future perfect *factus ero* → *I shall have been made* and pluperfect *factus eram* → *I had been made*. When meaning ‘become’ *fio* is followed by a nominative.

Indicative	Present	Future	Imperfect
1st person singular	fio	fiam	fiebam
2nd person singular	fis	fies	fiebas
3rd person singular	fit	fiet	fiebat
1st person plural	—	fimus	fiebamus
2nd person plural	—	fietis	fiebatis
3rd person plural	fiunt	fient	fiebant
Subjunctive	Perfect	Imperfect	
1st person singular	fiam	fierem	
2nd person singular	fias	fieres	
3rd person singular	fiat	fieret	
1st person plural	fiamus	fieremus	
2nd person plural	fiatis	fieretis	
3rd person plural	fiant	fierent	

**C** *Edo ēsse ēdi ēsum* → *eat*. Note the similarity between this and parts of *sum* (see Units 12 and 58 **A**). The verb to eat is distinguished by the long vowel in *ēs-* but this will not be apparent when you are reading ‘real’ Latin. The parts of the verb which are not listed here are regular.

Present indicative	Active	Passive
1st person singular	edo	—
2nd person singular	ēs	—
3rd person singular	ēst	ēstur
1st person plural	edimus	—
2nd person plural	ēstis	—
3rd person plural	edunt	—
Subjunctive active	Present	Imperfect
1st person singular	edam or edim	ēssem
2nd person singular	edas or edis	ēsset
3rd person singular	edat or edit	ēsset
1st person plural	edamus	ēssemus
2nd person plural	edatis	ēssetis
3rd person plural	edant or edint	ēsset

Imperfect subjunctive passive: *ēssetur*

Imperative active: 2nd person: *ēs* or *ēsto* (s.) *ēste* or *ēstote* (pl.), 3rd Person: *ēsto* (s.) *edunto* (pl.)

Present infinitive: *ēsse*

**A** Eo ire ii (less commonly ivi) itum → go. In the perfect tenses the iis- is sometimes contracted to is-, e.g. isti, istis, isse etc.

Indicative	Present	Future	Imperfect	
1st person singular	eo	ibo	ibam	
2nd person singular	is	ibis	ibas	
3rd person singular	it	ibit	ibat	
1st person plural	imus	ibimus	ibamus	
2nd person plural	itis	ibitis	ibatis	
3rd person plural	eunt	ibunt	ibant	
	Perfect	Fut. Perfect	Pluperfect	
1st person singular	ii	iero	ieram	
2nd person singular	iisti	ieris	ieras	
3rd person singular	iit	ierit	ierat	
1st person plural	iimus	ierimus	ieramus	
2nd person plural	iitis	ieritis	ieratis	
3rd person plural	ierunt	ierint	ierant	
Subjunctive	Perfect	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
1st person singular	eam	irem	ierim	iissem
2nd person singular	eas	ires	ieris	iisses
3rd person singular	eat	iret	ierit	iisset
1st person plural	eamus	iremus	ierimus	iissemus
2nd person plural	eatis	iretis	ieritis	iissetis
3rd person plural	eant	irent	ierint	iissent

Imperatives: 2nd person: i, ito (s.) ite, itote (pl.); 3rd person: ito (s.) eunto (pl.)

Infinitives: present: ire; future: iturus esse; perfect: iisse or ivisse; passive: iri (see Unit 47 **G**)

Participles: present: iens euntis; future: iturus -a -um

Supine: itum (acc.) itu (abl.). Gerund: eundum

3rd person singular passive: present: itur; imperfect: ibatur; perfect: itum est

Compounds of eo like adeo → approach have a full passive form.

**B** Fero ferre tuli latum → bring, bear, carry. Like fero goes its compound auferro auferre abstuli ablatum → take away. It also shares forms with tollo tollere sustuli sublatum → raise.

Indicative active	Present	Future	Imperfect
1st person singular	fero	feram	fereram
2nd person singular	fers	feres	ferebas
3rd person singular	fert	feret	fererat
1st person plural	ferimus	feremus	fereramus
2nd person plural	fertis	feretis	fereratis
3rd person plural	ferunt	ferent	fererant

Indicative active	Perfect	Future perfect	Pluperfect	
1st person singular	tuli	tulero	tuleram	
2nd person singular	tulisti	tuleris	tuleras	
3rd person singular	tulit	tulerit	tulerat	
1st person plural	tulimus	tulerimus	tuleramus	
2nd person plural	tulistis	tuleritis	tuleratis	
3rd person plural	tulerunt	tulerint	tulerant	
Indicative passive	Present	Future	Imperfect	
1st person singular	feror	ferar	ferebar	
2nd person singular	fereris or ferris	fereris (or -re)	ferebaris (or -re)	
3rd person singular	fertur	feretur	ferebatur	
1st person plural	ferimur	feremur	ferebamur	
2nd person plural	ferimini	ferimini	ferebamini	
3rd person plural	feruntur	ferentur	ferebantur	
	Perfect	Future perfect	Pluperfect	
1st person singular	latus sum	latus ero	latus eram	
2nd person singular	latus es	latus eris	latus eras	
3rd person singular	latus est	latus erit	latus erat	
1st person plural	lati sumus	lati erimus	lati eramus	
2nd person plural	lati estis	lati eritis	lati eratis	
3rd person plural	lati sunt	lati erunt	lati erant	
Subjunctive active	Present	Perfect	Passive: Present	Perfect
1st person singular	feram	tulerim	ferar	latus sim
2nd person singular	feras	tuleris	feraris (or -re)	latus sis
3rd person singular	ferat	tulerit	feratur	latus sit
1st person plural	feramus	tulerimus	feramur	lati simus
2nd person plural	feratis	tuleritis	feramini	lati sitis
3rd person plural	ferant	tulerint	ferantur	lati sint
Subjunctive active	Imperfect	Pluperfect	Passive: Imperfect	Pluperfect
1st person singular	ferrem	tulisse	ferrer	latus essem
2nd person singular	ferres	tulisses	ferreris (or -re)	latus esses
3rd person singular	ferret	tulisset	ferretur	latus esset
1st person plural	ferremus	tulissemus	ferremur	lati essemus
2nd person plural	ferretis	tulissetis	ferremini	lati essetis
3rd person plural	ferrent	tulissent	ferrentur	lati essent

Active imperative: 2nd person: **fer/fero** (s.) **ferte/fertote** (pl.),  
3rd person: **ferto** (s.) **ferunto** (pl.)

Passive imperative: 2nd person: **ferre/fertor** (s.) **ferimini** (pl.),  
3rd person: **fertor** (s.) **feruntor** (pl.)

Infinitives: present active: **ferre**; present passive: **ferri**; perfect  
active: **tulisse**; perfect passive: **latus esse**; future active: **laturus**  
**esse**; future passive: **laturus iri**

Participles: present: **ferens ferentis**; perfect: **latus -a -um**;  
future: **laturus -a -um**

Gerund: **ferendum**; gerundive: **ferendus -a -um**; supine: **laturus**

**Direct questions are those asked directly of someone and ending in a question mark.**

### **A Single direct questions**

- In English, when we turn a statement into a question we change the position of the verb.

**e.g.** statement: *This is a kangaroo.* question: *Is this a kangaroo?*  
In Latin, the syllable *-ne* is added to the first word.

**e.g.** statement: *tu hoc fecisti* → *you did this.* question: *tunc hoc fecisti?* → *did you do this?*

- When **nonne** introduces the question it implies that the questioner would like to hear the answer 'yes'. This requires something like 'surely?' in English.

**e.g.** *nonne hoc fecisti?* → *surely you did this? or you did do this, didn't you?*

- When **num** introduces the question it implies that the questioner would like to hear the answer 'no'. This requires something like 'surely not?' in English.

**e.g.** *num hoc fecisti?* → *surely you did not do this? or you did not do this, did you?*

- When **an** introduces a question it expresses the speaker's surprise.

**e.g.** *an tu hoc fecisti?* → *did you really do this?*

- As in English, direct questions may be introduced by an interrogative (question) word, such as **quis?** / **qui?** (*who?*) or one of its compounds which decline (listed in Unit 42 **C** and **D**), or any of the following:

**quo?** → *to where*  
(*whither?*)

**ubi?** → *where?*

**unde?** → *from where*  
(*whence?*)

**quando?** → *when?*

**qualis?** → *what kind of?*

**quantus -a -um?** → *how great?*

**quotiens?** → *how often?*

**quot?** → *how many?*

**uter?** → *which (of two)?*

**quomodo?** → *how*  
(*in what way?*)

**cur?** → *why?*

**quam?** → *how* (as in  
*how long?*)

**qua?** → *by what way?*

**quare?** → *why?*

**quamobrem?** → *why?*

**quamdiu?** → *for how long?*

**e.g.** *quomodo hoc fecisti?* → *how did you do this?*

- Sometimes a single direct question is not introduced by a question word but is implied in the tone of voice. In Latin the question mark will tell you whether it is such a question.

**e.g.** *tu hoc fecisti?* → *did you do this?*

**B** Direct questions which offer an alternative are introduced by **utrum ... an** (or **anne**). The negative is **annon**. Sometimes the word **utrum** is omitted.

**e.g.** *utrum vos expectabimus annon?* → *shall we expect you or not?*

**C** The subjunctive is used for **deliberative questions** (Unit 54 **A**).

**e.g.** *quid faciamus?* → *what are we to do?*

**D** **Rhetorical questions** are those which do not really expect an answer and take the **accusative and infinitive construction** (Unit 76 **B** and **C**).

**e.g.** *cur hostibus auxilium misisse?* → *Why has he sent help to his enemies?*

**E** The single answers **yes** and **no** do not exist in Latin. The closest are phrases like *ita* → *just so*, *ita vero* → *just so indeed*, *vero* or *sane* → *truly*, *etiam* → *even (so)*, *non ita* or *non vero* → *not so* and *minime* or *minime vero* → *least of all*.

### 1 Translate the following questions into English.

**e.g.** *visne fabulam spectare?* → *do you want to watch the play?*

- |                              |                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a an Caesar necatus est?     | e illumne gladiatorem antea vidisti? |
| b canemne meam vidisti?      | f puerine in harena ludunt?          |
| c an ille pecuniam abstulit? | g num isto candidato favetis?        |
| d num Titus cras veniet?     | h nonne flores pulchrae sunt?        |

### 2 Translate the following questions into English.

**e.g.** *quo vadis domine?* → *where are you going, master?*

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| a quando princeps meus adveniet?      | g quomodo urbem antiquam invenisti?     |
| b quomodo Caesar Rhenum transiit?     | h quam durus est hic gladius?           |
| c cur eam non amas?                   | i quot oves sunt in agris?              |
| d qua fur in atrium venit?            | j unde Claudius illam togam comparavit? |
| e ubi sunt sellae, ancillae?          |   |
| f quamdiu in cubiculo iacebas Quinte? |   |

### 3 Translate the following questions into English.

**e.g.** *utrum domi manebis an mecum ambulabis?* → *will you stay at home or walk with me?*

- |                                   |                                      |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a clipeum perfecisti faber?       | e utrum Vesuvium visitavisti annon?  |
| b utrum Tiberium an Quintum amas? | f quamobrem Romani Gallos oppugnant? |
| c quotiens haec verba dicit?      | g nuces an uvas mavis?               |
| d cenam parabis annon?            |                                      |

### 4 Translate the following questions into Latin.

**e.g.** *you are not waiting for the emperor, are you?* → **num imperatorem exspectas?**

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| a You (s.) did hide the gold, didn't you? | d Did the dog really bite you (s.)? |
| b Where are the merchant's gems?          | e Surely he has not sold the farm?  |
| c Is Marcus at home?                      | f Will Aemilia come to Rome or not? |

**A** So far we have looked at **simple** sentences which make a statement or ask a question in the **indicative**, express a wish in the **subjunctive** or give an order in the **imperative**.

**B** In **complex** sentences we encounter more than one clause and one clause almost always has a more important status than the other(s). This is called the **main clause** and the others are called **subordinate clauses**.

**C** The **main clause** can stand on its own and still make sense whereas a **subordinate clause** cannot, e.g. *While I was cooking dinner, the dog stole the cakes*. In this sentence you can identify the main clause, which is *the dog stole the cakes*, because it can stand on its own and still make sense. However, the other clause, *while I was cooking dinner*, does not make complete sense on its own and so is a subordinate clause. The important idea in the sentence is that the dog stole the cakes while the subordinate clause simply sets the main clause in a context. It tells us at what point the dog stole the cakes and what else was going on at the same time.

**D** Latin sentences are usually much longer than English ones, sometimes as long as a paragraph. They may therefore contain a large number of subordinate clauses. When you are translating into English, it is a good idea to split a Latin sentence up into a number of smaller English ones to avoid a cumbersome result.

**E** Subordinate clauses in English are usually linked to the main clause by a conjunction and this is frequently the same in Latin.

**F** The key to understanding subordinate clauses lies in the verbs. Each subordinate clause is governed by its own verb. That verb is commonly a **finite** one, often a **subjunctive**, as in **final clauses** (Unit 66), **consecutive clauses** (Unit 67), **clauses of fearing** (Unit 71 **C**), **clauses of doubting** (Unit 72 **A**) and **indirect questions** (Unit 78). Indicative verbs are found in some subordinate clauses like **causal clauses** (Unit 65 **B**) and **concessive clauses** (Unit 65 **A**). However, the verb may also be a participle, as in the case of the **ablative absolute** (Unit 70) or an infinitive, as in the **indirect statement** (Units 76 and 77).

Once you have identified the main verb (or verbs) and clause of a sentence, look for all the other verbs which will be the foundations of the subordinate clauses.

**G** **Relative clauses** (Unit 64) are also called **adjectival clauses** because they qualify a word or idea in another clause, like an adjective. **Relative particles** like *ubi* (*where*) also introduce adjectival clauses.

**H** Those clauses known as **adverbial clauses** qualify the main

clause like an adverb, answering question such as how?, why? or when?

- **Consecutive clauses** (Unit 67): *so that*
- **Final clauses** (Unit 66): *in order that*
- **Causal clauses** (Unit 65 **B**): *because*
- **Temporal clauses** (Units 68 and 69): *when, until*
- **Conditional clauses** (Units 74 and 75): *if, unless*
- **Concessive clauses** (Unit 65 **A**): *although, even if*
- **Clauses of proviso** (Unit 71 **A**): *provided that*
- **Comparisons** (Unit 71 **A**): *as, as if, as though*
- **Clauses of fear** (Unit 71 **C**): *lest*

**I** The indirect statement (Units 76 and 77), indirect question (Unit 78), indirect command and indirect wish (Unit 79) are called **substantival clauses** because they stand like a noun in relation to the main verb.

### **I** Sequence of tenses

The tense of the Latin verb in a subordinate clause is not necessarily the same as it would be in English. In Latin something called the **sequence of tenses** is applied. There are exceptions to it but the broad principle is that:

- If a verb is in the present, future or future perfect indicative or the imperative or in the present or perfect subjunctive, then it is said to be in **primary sequence**.
- If a verb is in the imperfect or pluperfect indicative or subjunctive, then it is said to be in **historic sequence**.
- The perfect indicative tense straddles these definitions. If it is used to mean, e.g. *I have eaten* then it has some reference to the present and so is **primary**. If it is used simply to mean e.g. *I ate*, then it has no reference to the present and so is **historic**.
- If the main verb is **primary**, then it is followed by a verb in a primary tense in the subordinate clause. On the other hand, if a main verb is **historic**, it is followed by a verb in a historic tense in the subordinate clause.
- In subordinate clauses, the present and imperfect subjunctive tenses are used for incomplete action, while the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive tenses are used for completed action.

**A** The relative pronoun **qui quae quod** (*who, which*) (Unit 41 **B**) usually introduces relative clauses but they may also be introduced by relative adverbs like **ubi** (*where*).

**e.g.** **corona quam rex gerebat erat aurea** → *the crown which the king wore was golden*  
**castra posuerunt ubi flumen latissimum est** → *they camped where the river is widest*

**B** As well as coming after the main clause or even in the middle of it, relative clauses sometimes come before it.

**e.g.** **quae verba pater tibi dicet ea audi** → *listen to those words which father will say to you*

**C** If the relative pronoun is the subject of a verb which links a subject with a complement (see Unit 23 **C**), like **sum** → *I am*, **appareo** → *I appear*, **audio** → *I am called* (lit. I hear [of myself]), **evado** or **existo** → *I turn out* and **videor** → *I seem*, then the relative pronoun often agrees in number and gender with the complement.

**e.g.** **Roma quod mundi caput est** → *Rome, which is the capital of the world*

**D** A relative pronoun or an **ablative absolute** (Unit 70) which uses a relative pronoun is sometimes found at the beginning of a sentence to show a connection with something that has happened previously.

**e.g.** **quam ob rem** → *for which reason* (often written as one word)  
**quo facto** → *when this was done* (ablative absolute)  
**quod viderunt** → *as to that which they saw*

**E** If the relative clause simply states a fact about the **antecedent** (Unit 41 **B**), then the verb of the relative clause is in the indicative.

**e.g.** **in silvis sunt multae ferae quas timemus** → *in the woods there are many wild beasts which we fear*

**F** The relative pronoun can be used to introduce **final clauses** (Unit 66 **D**), in which case the verb is in the subjunctive.

**e.g.** **imperator legatos misit qui dona regi darent** → *the emperor sent ambassadors to give the king gifts* (lit. who would give the king gifts)

When a final clause contains a comparative then it is introduced by **quo**.

**e.g.** **equos conscenderunt quo celerius ad villam perveniremus** → *we mounted the horses to reach the villa more quickly*

**G** The relative pronoun can also be used to introduce **consecutive clauses** (Unit 67 **D**) when the verb is also in the subjunctive. The meaning of **qui** in these cases amounts to *of such a kind that* and the clause defines a characteristic of the antecedent. (For **quin** see Units 72 and 73.)



**e.g.** *nemo erat tam fortis qui illis leonibus resisteret* → *no-one was so brave as to resist those lions*

**H** The relative pronoun can also be used to introduce **causal clauses** (Unit 65 **B**) in which case it is also followed by a subjunctive.

**e.g.** *te culpo qui hoc facias* → *I blame you for doing this*

**1** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate **A** and **B** opposite.

**e.g.** *vir quem iudex arcessivit est innocens* → *the man whom the judge sent for is innocent*

- a ille qui in spelunca dormiebat antiquissimus erat.
- b hodie illa templa quae Romani aedificaverunt videre volumus.
- c terra unde peregrinus advenit paene deserta est.
- d viros quos elegisti nos iam vidimus.
- e quem tu sequeris nos quoque sequemur.
- f Claudiam manebam ubi casa arboribus celatur.
- g verba quae imperator dixerat milites delectaverunt.
- h statim prosiluit ubi hostes densissimi erant.
- i bene eum cognovi cuius filius mortuus est.
- j candidatum cui favemus numquam amavistis.

**2** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate **C** and **D** opposite.

**e.g.** *quod locuti sunt, nemo id intellegit* → *as to what they have said, no-one understands it*

- a Londinium, quae urbs maxima videtur, multo minor quam Roma est.
- b uxor mea, quod mihi praesidium semper erat, est iam avia.
- c Athenae quod est caput Atticae pulcherrima urbs est.
- d quam ob rem Cassius etiam divitior factus est.
- e quo facto, ille valde iratus e foro discessit.
- f ille est Catilina, quod evasit exitium reipublicae.
- g quam ob rem non iterum navigabimus.
- h quod Caesar faciet, nemo volet parere.
- i quo facto Romani multos dies gaudebant.
- j Sirius, quae est clarissima stella iam ortus est.

**3** Translate the following into Latin.

**e.g.** *what I have said, everyone has heard* → *quod ego dixi omnes audiverunt*

- a He will look for the bird where he saw the nest.
- b Have you (s.) seen the young man whom Lucretia loves?
- c As to that which we did, everyone will be silent (*taceo*).
- d For which reason the procession halted.
- e Brutus whose clan (*gens*) is noble, has saved the republic.
- f The dog caught the cat which had caught the mouse.
- g Augustus, who was the ornament (*decus*) of his time.
- h They killed the goose which used to lay (*pario*) the golden eggs.
- i Cloelia, who was a model to the Romans.
- j When this was done, the spectators applauded.

**A** Concessive clauses are those which indicate a concession (*although*). They are introduced by the concessive conjunctions (Unit 37 **B**) *etsi*, *etiamsi* or *tametsi* (*even if, even though*), *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *ut* (negative *ne*), *licet* (*although*) or *cum* (*whereas*).

• If the clause is introduced by *quamquam*, then its verb will be in the indicative. (Some later writers used it with the subjunctive.)

**e.g.** *quamquam pons deletus est, ego flumen transivi* → *although the bridge was destroyed, I crossed the river*

• If the clause is introduced by *quamvis*, *licet*, *ut* or *cum* then its verb will be in the subjunctive.

**e.g.** *quamvis pons deletus sit, ego flumen transivi* → *although the bridge was destroyed, I crossed the river*

• If the clause is introduced by *etsi*, *etiamsi* or *tametsi* (*even though*), then the mood of its verb is decided by the same rules as for conditionals (Units 74 and 75). Generally it is in:

i the indicative if the concession did occur, is occurring or will occur.

**e.g.** *etiamsi pons deletus erat, ego flumen transivi* → *even though the bridge had been destroyed, I crossed the river*

or

ii the subjunctive, if the concession might have occurred, may be occurring or might occur. The subjunctive verb in the main clause is commonly translated into English by the words *would* or *should*.

**e.g.** *etsi pons deletus esset, ego flumen transivissem* → *even if the bridge had been destroyed, I would have crossed the river*

**B** Causal clauses indicate the reason for something (*because*). They are introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quando* → *because, since, and cum* → *since*.

• In causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* or *quando*, when the person (author or character) stating the reason is also supporting the reason as true, then the verb of the clause is in the indicative.

**e.g.** *te non vocavi quod dormiebas* → *I did not call you because you were asleep*

However, when the speaker gives a reason with which others, including the speaker, may not agree, then the verb of the clause is in the subjunctive.

**e.g.** *Romani victi sunt quod perfidi essemus* → *the Romans were beaten (some say) because we were treacherous*

• When *cum* introduces a causal clause, then its verb is in the subjunctive, whether the speaker vouches for the reason or not.

• The verb of a causal clause introduced by the relative pronoun *qui* or *quippe qui* (*since, for in fact, doubtless, because* [often sarcastic]) is in the subjunctive (see Unit 64 **H**).

**1 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate concessive clauses.**

**e.g.** *quamquam dives sum, te non spernam* → *although I am rich, I shall not spurn you*

- a *quamquam femina pulchra erat, avarus eam suspicatus est.*
- b *quamvis signum captum esset, legionarii fortiter pugnauerunt.*
- c *licet tabernarii inurbani sint multas tamen stolas emam.*
- d *ut gladius in saxo infixus sit, Arturus eum extrahet.*
- e *quamquam Gaius modo septem annos natus est nihilominus inter iuvenes ludit.*
- f *etsi vesperscit, pueri in silvas repunt.*
- g *etiamsi pater discessit strenue laboramus.*
- h *tametsi gladiator ingens est, cum eo pugnabo.*
- i *quamquam avum meum numquam vidisti eum certe amabis.*
- j *tametsi exercitus non paratus fuisset, barbaros superavissemus.*

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate causal clauses.**

**e.g.** *Iulius abest quod aeger sit* → *Julius is away because, some say, he is ill*

- a *Aemilia Caelium non amat quod pater eius pauper sit.*
- b *Cicero coniuratos interfecit quia respublica in maximo periculo esset.*
- c *Quintus non venabitur quippe qui feras timeat.*
- d *senex sero adveniet quod sero discessit.*
- e *Cassius Caesarem odit quod Romam amet.*
- f *canem expuli quia felem insequabatur.*
- g *es dives Cassius quoniam felix sis.*
- h *harundines comparaverunt quando cras piscabuntur.*
- i *cum iter certe longum sit tecum ibo.*
- j *pueri altercantur quoniam fessi sunt.*

**3 Translate the following sentences into Latin. Use the conjunctions provided.**

**e.g.** *we are weeping because the enemy are here* → *lacrimamus quod hostes adsunt*

- a Although (*quamvis*) Alexander had been wounded, he fought more fiercely.
- b Although (*quamquam*) Gaius is lazy, he will repair the wheel.
- c Even if (*etsi*) you (s.) had killed the king, we would not have escaped.
- d Even though (*etsi*) the river was very wide, we reached the bank.
- e The mice are playing because (*quia*) the cat is away.
- f Rome was burned, some say, because (*quod*) Nero wanted to build a new palace.
- g The king has summoned me doubtless because (*quippe qui*) he admires me.
- h The prince will come because (*cum*) he loves you (s.).
- i Titus will not fight because (*quoniam*) he is gentle.
- j Although (*quamquam*) we cannot see you (pl.), we can hear your (pl.) words.

**A** Final clauses (commonly called **purpose clauses**) express the purpose for which something is done. They are introduced by **ut** (*so that*), if they are positive and by **ne** (sometimes **ut ne**) (*lest, so that not, in case*), if they are negative. Some are introduced by the relative pronoun **qui quae quod** and some by **quo**. It is common in English to translate a purpose clause with a simple infinitive, e.g. *I opened the box to see the contents.*

**B** The following phrases can introduce a negative final clause as well as **ne** (*lest*):

**ne quis** → *lest anyone, so that no-one*

**ne quid** → *lest anything, so that nothing*

**ne umquam** → *lest ever, so that never*

**ne usquam** → *lest anywhere, so that nowhere*

**ne ullus** → *lest any, so that no*

**C** The verb of the final clause is in the **subjunctive**. The tense of the subjunctive depends upon the **sequence of tenses** (Unit 63 **J**).

i If the verb of the main clause is **primary** (in the imperative or the present, future, future perfect or perfect with 'have'), then the verb of the final clause will be in the **present subjunctive**.

**e.g.** *ianuam claudo ne hi canes effugiant* → *I am closing the door so that these dogs do not escape*

ii If the verb of the main clause is **historic** (perfect without 'have', imperfect or pluperfect), then the verb of the final clause will be in the **imperfect subjunctive**.

**e.g.** *ianuam clauseram ne hi canes effugerent* → *I had closed the door so that these dogs would not escape*

**D** A final clause may be introduced by the relative pronoun **qui quae quod** (see Unit 64 **F**).

**e.g.** *senatores Caesarem misit qui Gallos superaret* → *the senators sent Caesar to overpower the Gauls*

**E** If a final clause contains a comparative adjective or adverb then it is introduced by **quo** (see Unit 64 **F**).

**e.g.** *decem dies exercebat quo citius cursum curreret* → *he exercised for ten days so that he might run the race more quickly*

**1 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate****C i opposite.**

**e.g.** *ad portum curremus ut naves videamus* → *we shall run to the harbour to see the ships*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a tene speculum ut te videas.                            | f canes latrant ne quis domui appropinquet.      |
| b oves custodio ne leonibus edantur.                     | g Caesar collem munit ne Galli castra capiant.   |
| c pavimentum puer lavat ut a matre laudetur.             | h omnia nomina appello ne quis omittatur.        |
| d pictores strenue laborabunt ut atrium uno die pingant. | i nonne plaustrum reficies ut frumentum feramus? |
| e tabulam celavi ne illa insula usquam inveniat.         |  |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate****C ii opposite.**

**e.g.** *arborem succidit ut lignum compararet* → *he cut the tree down to get firewood*

- a equum conscendi ut artem meam demonstrarem.  
 b corpora sepeliebat ne quid videretur.  
 c mercator aediculam occultam fabricavit ut gemmas intus celaret.  
 d venatores cervis insidiebantur ut cibum liberis praeberent.  
 e fundos vendiderat ut aes alienum exsolveret.  
 f canem comparavi ne Claudius usquam se celare posset.  
 g homo scelestus arborem succidit ne ulla avis ibi nidificaret.  
 h puellae libros legebant ut carmina antiqua cognoscerent.  
 i portas clausuramus ne quis admitteretur.  
 j portam obseravi ne umquam domum iterum reviseremus.

**3 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate****D and E opposite.**

**e.g.** *legatos mittemus qui foedera renouent* → *we shall send ambassadors to renew the pacts*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a dux novas copias misit quae nobis subveniant.    | e Quintia, dona misi quae te delectent.                   |
| b fabros conduxeramus qui thermas aedificarent.    | f oculos magnos habeo quo melius te videam.               |
| c athleta diu exercebat quo facem celerius ferret. | g murum diruebat quo plus horti videret.                  |
| d hunc scribam comparavi qui meos libros scribat.  | h pastor ovile aedificavit quo oves tutius protegerentur. |

**4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** *I drink wine to take the pain away* → *vinum bibo ut dolorem emoveam*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a Are you (s.) hiding the bread to annoy mother?                   | d I washed the floor so that no mud might be seen.             |
| b The farmer was watching the field in case any cow should escape. | e I have large teeth so that I may eat you (s.) better.        |
| c We have sons to avenge us.                                       | f I showed everyone the box so that they would not suspect me. |

**A** Consecutive clauses (commonly called **result clauses**) express the result (consequence) of an action. They are introduced by **ut** (*with the result that* or *so that*). A negative result is expressed by **ut non** (or **quin** – see Unit 73 **A**). In English we usually use *that* to introduce a consecutive clause, e.g. *We walked so far that we were exhausted*. Sometimes, however, we can omit a conjunction altogether, e.g. *We were so late we missed the boat*.

**B** A consecutive clause is usually (but not always) signposted in the main clause by one of the following:

tam, sic or ita → so

adeo → to such an extent,

so much

tantus -a -um → so great, so big

talis -is -e → such, of

such a kind

tot → so many

totiens → so often

**C** The verb of a consecutive clause is in the **subjunctive**. The tense of the subjunctive does not depend on the sequence of tenses but stays for the most part in the same tense as it would appear in English.

- i If the result is going to occur in the future, then Latin invents a **future subjunctive** tense. This consists of the **future participle** (Unit 44 **D**), which agrees with whatever it refers to, and the **present subjunctive** of the verb *to be* (Unit 58 **A**).

e.g. tam sero advenisti ut pompam non visurus sis → you have arrived so late that you will not see the procession

- ii If the result occurs in the present, then the **present subjunctive** is used.

e.g. tam altum est flumen ut transire non possim → the river is so deep that I cannot cross

- iii If the result occurred in the past and stress is being laid upon the fact that it actually happened, then the **perfect subjunctive** is used.

e.g. Cicero Catilinam tam ferociter obtrexavit ut senatores illum evitaverint → Cicero disparaged Catiline so fiercely that the senators actually avoided him

- iv If the result occurred in the past and is expressed simply as a consequence of the action in the main clause, then the **imperfect subjunctive** is used.

e.g. tanta erat tempestas ut velas dare non possemus → the storm was so great that we could not set the sails

**D** Some consecutive clauses may be introduced by a relative pronoun which has the sense 'of such a kind that' (see Unit 64 **G**).

e.g. Boudicca non est femina quam irrites → Boudicca is not a woman to provoke (lit. is not a woman of such a kind that you may provoke her)

**1 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate****c i opposite.**

**e.g.** adeo cunctatur ut omnes perituri sint → *he is delaying so much that everyone will die*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a tot milites rex comparavit ut expeditio certe victura sit. | f totiens decidit ut crura fracturus sit.                   |
| b tam laetus erit pater ut nobis dona daturus sit.           | g tam esuriens est pauper ut calceos suos esurus sit.       |
| c tanta est venti velocitas ut hodie non navigaturi simus.   | h tam infirmus est pons ut etiam capri non transituri sint. |
| d adeo ningit ut nihil visuri simus.                         | i talis est Titus ut duci optime subventurus sit.           |
| e tot pisces feles devorat ut mox dormitura sit.             | j tam celeriter currit ut periculum non visura sit.         |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate****c ii opposite.**

**e.g.** adeo pluit ut flumen inundet → *it is raining so much that the river is flooding*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a tam alta est turris ut tectum non videam.        | f haec avis totiens cantat ut me semper delectet.  |
| b talis est Crassus ut fautores non corruptat.     | g tam gravia sunt plaustra ut pons frangatur.      |
| c tanta sunt saxa ut asini ea non possint portare. | h tam clare loquitur ut omnia verba audire possim. |
| d terra adeo tremat ut paene cadam.                | i tanta est fides mea ut inermis pugnem.           |
| e tot oves viae obstant ut pastores haereant.      | j aqua ita calida est ut non bibi possit.          |

**3 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate****c iii and iv opposite.**

**e.g.** tam parvus erat ut in hama sederet → *he was so small that he used to sit in a bucket*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a mater nostra tam benigna erat ut semper amaretur.                   |  |
| b magistratum totiens vituperaveram ut comprehensus sim.              |  |
| c tantos montes transiveramus ut defessi essemus.                     |  |
| d puellae adeo lacrimabant ut dictatorem commoverint.                 |  |
| e tot barbari per portas irruerunt ut custodes resistere non possent. |  |
| f Tarquinius tam superbe regnaverat ut cives eum expulerint.          |  |
| g elephantum tam ingentes erant ut Romani valde timerent.             |  |
| h picturam tam bene pinxit ut multa praemia acciperet.                |  |
| i tam celeriter equos equitabat ut tandem interfectus sit.            |  |
| j tot viros vexaverat ut in insula solus derelictus sit.              |  |

**4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** *he was so amazed that he did not speak* → adeo stupefactus est ut non locutus sit

- |  |
|--|
| a Helen had so many wooers that she could actually choose her husband.       |
| b Marius is so great a general that the soldiers will follow him faithfully. |
| c Pausanias so (ita) liked the temple that he would always praise it.        |
| d We are so many that you (s.) cannot resist us.                             |
| e The boy used to cry 'wolf' so often that no-one would believe him.         |
| f Cato was so honest that he would not lie.                                  |

**A** Temporal clauses express the time when something happened, is happening or will happen. They are introduced by **temporal conjunctions** (Unit 37 **B**).

**B** Temporal clauses introduced by **ubi**, **ut** (*when*), **postquam** (*after*), **simulac**, **simulatque** (*as soon as*) or **quotiens** (*whenever*) have their verbs in the **indicative**.

**e.g.** **ubi** in Gallia habitabam magnam villam habebam → *when I used to live in Gaul, I had a large country estate*

After **postquam**, **simulac** or **ubi**, a Latin perfect tense is sometimes best translated by an English pluperfect tense.

**e.g.** **postquam** Caelius intravit omnes tacuerunt → *after Caelius had entered everyone fell silent*

**C** Clauses introduced by **dum**, **donec**, **quoad** and **quam diu** (*while, as long as*), have their verbs in the **indicative**.

**e.g.** **multi** liberorum nostrorum discunt donec ludunt → *many of our children learn while they are playing*

**dum** (*while*), is regularly followed by the present tense, even if referring to a past action, to indicate a period of time during which something else happens. (This is called the **historic present**.)

**e.g.** **dum** Roma incenditur, Nero fidibus canebat → *while Rome was burning, Nero was playing on the lyre*

**D** Clauses introduced by **dum**, **donec**, **quoad** (*until*), and **antequam**, **priusquam** (*before*) have their verbs in the **indicative** if all that is being conveyed is an idea of time.

**e.g.** **heri** in foro cum amicis manebam donec sol occidit → *yesterday I stayed in the forum with my friends until the sun set*

Often **antequam** and **priusquam** are split into separate words (**ante ... quam** and **prius ... quam**) which do not need to stand next to each other.

**e.g.** **Septimus** canem ingentem prius vidit quam ille latravit → *Septimus saw the huge dog before it barked*

**E** Clauses introduced by **dum**, **donec**, **quoad** (*until*) and **antequam**, **priusquam** (*before*) can have their verbs in the **subjunctive** if the action of the clause is anticipated or has an idea of purpose as well as time.

**e.g.** **cenam** celeriter coquus parat antequam hospites adveniant → *the cook is preparing dinner quickly before the guests arrive*



**1** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate **B** opposite.

e.g. *quotiens tu vocabis ego veniam* → *whenever you (will) call, I shall come*

- a ubi tu in silvis errabas ego in horto laborabam.
- b postquam fures togas abstulerunt ianitor verberatus est.
- c postquam Valeria cecinit omnes plauserunt.
- d simulac taurus intravit nos diffugimus.
- e simulatque patronus advenit, clientes surrexerunt.
- f ut tecta viderunt Romam agnoverunt.
- g ubi haec verba iudex dixit reus tremuit.
- h simulac pons fracta est Horatius in flumen desiluit.
- i postquam Milo Clodium interfecit in exsilium relegatus est.
- j quotiens galli cantabant agricolae expergiscebantur.

**2** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate **C**, **D** and **E** opposite.

e.g. *dum liberi ludunt iuvenes coniurabant* → *while the children played, the youths plotted*

- a navem paraveramus priusquam nautae advenerunt.
- b dum sol fulgebat apes mel faciebant.
- c atrium ornabimus antequam hospites advenient.
- d hostes latebant donec agmen in saltum venerit.
- e in castris manebamus donec periculum emotum sit.
- f dum sacerdotes sacrificant sicarius me percussit.
- g poeta recitabat quam diu turba manebat.
- h ignem exstinxit antequam casa flammam conciperet.
- i dum canes dormiunt fures domum intrabunt.
- j tribunus persisterat donec consul cessisset.

**3** Translate the following sentences into Latin.

e.g. *When (ubi) it snows the water freezes* → *ubi ningit aqua concrescit*

- a While (**dum**) the guards were shouting amongst themselves, the captives escaped.
- b Did you (s.) wait until (**quoad**) the poet had recited the story?
- c The lion lay hidden for a long time before (**antequam**) he attacked the ram.
- d We listened as long as (**quam diu**) the orator was speaking.
- e While (**dum**) Decius was approaching, the dog barked.
- f Whenever (**quotiens**) I buy a puppy for you (s.) you ask for (**peto**) another.
- g We shall knock the door until (**dum**) you (s.) open it.
- h After (**postquam**) the earth trembled, the mountain exploded.
- i Marcellus, hit the nail as soon as (**simulac**) I nod.
- j While (**donec**) Julia was walking on the riverbank, the otters were playing in the river.

**A** **cum** can mean *when, whenever, since* or *because*, according to its context.

**B** **cum** can only govern an **indicative** verb under the following circumstances:

- When **cum** (*when*) introduces a temporal clause with a verb referring to the present or future.

*e.g.* **cum aurum invenero dives ero** → *when I find* (lit. shall have found) *the gold, I shall be rich*

- When **cum** (*when*) introduces a temporal clause referring to the past which emphasizes the idea of time. (Note the phrase **cum primum** → *as soon as*).

*e.g.* **cum nos hostibus appropinquabamus vos terga dabatis** → *at the time when we were approaching the enemy, you were retreating*

- When **cum** (*when*) introduces a temporal clause referring to the past which is positioned *after* the main clause and, although a subordinate clause, expresses the main event of the sentence.

*e.g.* **navis paene ad portum advenerat cum gubernator excidit** → *the ship had almost reached the harbour when the helmsman fell out*

- When **cum** means *whenever*. If the verb in the main clause is in the present tense, then the verb of the temporal clause will be in the perfect tense. However, if the verb in the main clause is in a past tense, then the verb of the temporal clause will be in the pluperfect tense.

*e.g.* **cum tuba sonuerat athletae quam celerrime cucurrerunt** → *whenever the trumpet sounds* (lit. had sounded), *the athletes ran as quickly as possible*

**C** When **cum** (*when, since* or *because*) introduces a temporal clause referring to a past action other than those mentioned above, then the verb will be in the **subjunctive**:

- If the verb of the temporal clause refers to an action which occurs at the same time as the action of the main clause, then it is in the **imperfect subjunctive**.

*e.g.* **cum ver appropinquaret peregrinatores ad montes profecti sunt** → *when spring was approaching, the travellers set off for the mountains*

- If the verb of the temporal clause refers to an action which occurred before the action of the main verb, then it is in the **pluperfect subjunctive**.

*e.g.* **cum hospites discessissent Cassius coniurationem patefecit** → *when the guests had left, Cassius revealed the plot*

**1** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate **B** opposite.

**e.g.** cum tuba sonabit pompa discedet → *when the trumpet sounds, the procession will depart*

- a cum domina loquitur ancillae audiunt.
- b cum Sulla dictator erat omnes senatores in magno periculo erant.
- c coniurati Caesarem tenebant cum Casca eum percussit.
- d cum te vidi vox mea deest.
- e cum illum gladiatorem vident spectatores plaudunt.
- f cum librum leges fabulam intelleges.
- g montibus appropinquabamus cum Galli oppugnaverunt.
- h cum primum pons deletus est Horatius se in flumen coniecit.
- i cum pater intraverat pueri riserunt.
- j cum primum porta clausa erat puella puerum osculata est.

**2** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate **C** opposite.

**e.g.** cum viam invenissent omnes riserunt → *when they had found the road everyone smiled*

- a cum montes relinquissent peregrinatores gavisii sunt.
- b cum hospites advenissent vinum Sextus distribuit.
- c cum canes latrarent fures diffugiebant.
- d cum sol oriretur custodes dormiebant.
- e cum hoc scelus patefecisset Cicero coniuratos comprehendit.
- f Romam cum iter fecissemus nusquam hospitium invenire poteramus.
- g cum venatores lente reperent aper se celabat.
- h Caesar, cum Rhenum transire constituisset, pontem aedificavit.
- i cum auditores riderent poeta irascebatur.
- j cum litus vidissent nautae navem verterunt.

**3** Translate the following sentences into Latin. Use the conjunction **cum** in each one.

**e.g.** the sailors sing when they set sail → *nautae cantant cum vela dant*

- a You (s.) were turning the ship when the pirates attacked us.
- b When we had reached the shore, we thanked the gods.
- c I was walking home when the dog attacked me.
- d As soon as (cum primum) the bell rang, the monks departed.
- e When they had killed Caesar, the conspirators fled.
- f At the time when the young men were ill, the thief stole the gold.
- g When they had seen the bear, the boys fled.
- h Whenever the moon was bright, the werewolf walked.
- i The women used to sing when they spun thread.
- j At the time when the cook was preparing dinner, the guests arrived.

**A** The ablative absolute construction is a phrase which comes at the beginning of a sentence (or of a subordinate clause) and which is *grammatically* independent of the rest of the sentence, but does have a connection *in sense* with it. The phrase consists of a noun or pronoun in the ablative and a participle (Unit 44) (or another noun or adjective) agreeing with it.

**B** An ablative absolute is not used if the noun in it would refer to either the subject or the object of the main clause.

**C** It is sometimes possible to translate the ablative absolute literally into English.

**e.g.** labore confecto, agricolae domum redierunt → *with the work finished, the farmers returned home*

**D** If a participle is used in an ablative absolute, then the phrase can nearly always be translated as a temporal clause in English. The tense of the participle depends not on whether the time of its action is in the present, past or future, but on whether it happens before, during or after the action of the *main* verb in its clause:

- Caesare interfecto Brutus Roma effugit → *after Caesar was killed, Brutus escaped from Rome*
- spectatoribus tacentibus imperator signum dedit → *as the spectators were falling silent, the emperor gave the signal*
- fratribus discessuris nuntius regis advenit → *when the brothers were on the point of departing, the king's messenger arrived*

**E** In an ablative absolute, participles can take objects and constructions.

**e.g.** auriga equos flexuro rota fracta est → *as the charioteer was about to wheel the horses around, the wheel broke*

**F** As there is no participle for the verb *to be* in Latin, in an ablative absolute where one would be used if it existed, Latin just has the noun and adjective, or the noun and another noun, without any participle.

**e.g.** Pompeio duce legiones Spartacum superaverunt → *with Pompey as leader the legions overcame Spartacus*

**e.g.** ventis adversis, naves aegre in portum intraverunt → *since the winds were contrary the ships barely got into the harbour*

**1 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate D opposite.**

**e.g.** *rotis fractis plaustrum inutile erat* → *after the wheels were broken, the cart was useless*

- a auro invento avarus stupefactus est.
- b civibus loquentibus te audire non possum.
- c sole oriente matrona ancillas arcessivit.
- d his verbis dictis legatus celeriter discessit.
- e militibus discessuris foedus renovatum est.
- f tempestate adventura nautae in portu manebant.
- g nuntio locuto portae apertae sunt.
- h victoria nuntiata epistulam patri misimus.
- i obsidibus necatis sicarius de vita desperabat.
- j nave refecta nautae statim vela dederunt.

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate E and F opposite.**

**e.g.** *me duce certe vincemus* → *with me as leader, we will certainly win*

- a illis virginibus cantantibus nautae delirant.
- b Claudio et Aemilio praetoribus, nulli latrones damnati sunt.
- c custodibus captivos comitantibus agmen per silvas erravit.
- d Tarquinio rege Romani Cloacam Maximam construxerunt.
- e civibus secundis statuam patri meo erexi.
- f hostibus urbem oppugnaturis Iuppiter tonuit.
- g Marcello pecuniam adepto fundum comparavimus.
- h imperatore se necaturo milites seditionem fecerunt.
- i Boudicca regina Britanni Camulodunum expilaverunt.
- j filo ductore Theseus e labyrintho effugit.

**3 Translate the following sentences into Latin. Use the ablatives absolute construction.**

**e.g.** *when the dice had been cast, the gambler smiled* → *aleis iactis aleator risit*

- a As Jupiter was about to hurl a thunderbolt, Juno shouted.
- b While you (s.) were sleeping, I painted the bedroom.
- c After the light had been extinguished, we walked in darkness.
- d When we were on the point of seeing the target, the referee stopped the contest.
- e After the tyrant's brother was slain, the Athenians were severely oppressed.
- f When the water had been drained off, the soldiers crossed the river bed.
- g While the fishermen were bringing the rods, the boys were preparing the food.
- h With Marius as general we shall overcome the barbarians.
- i When camp was pitched (pono), the soldiers made bread.
- j With Mercury as our guide we shall reach the land of the dead.

**A Clauses of proviso**

A clause of proviso is introduced by **dum**, **dummodo** or **modo** (*provided that*). The construction is really an extension of the temporal clause **dum** (*as long as*) (Unit 68 **C**). However, the verb of the clause is in the **subjunctive**. A negative clause of proviso is introduced by **dum ne**.

**e.g.** oderint dum metuant → *let them hate provided that they fear*

**e.g.** in horto ludant dum flores ne carpant → *let them play in the garden provided that they do not pick the flowers*

**B Clauses of comparison**

In a clause of comparison the action of the clause is compared with the action of the main clause.

- If the comparison is being made with something that is an actual fact then the clause is introduced by **velut**, **sicut** (*just as*) or **ut** (*as*) (often with **ita** in the main clause), and the verb of the clause is in the **indicative**.

**e.g.** Caesar postridie necatus est, sicut vates praedixerat → *Caesar was killed on the following day, just as the prophet had predicted*

- If the comparison is being made with an event that is imaginary, then the clause is introduced by **quasi**, **ut si**, **velut si** (*as if*), or **ceu**, **tamquam** (*as though*), and the verb of the clause is in the **subjunctive**.

**e.g.** mihi mandata insolenter dedit quasi servus quidam essem → *he gave me the instructions haughtily, as if I were some slave*

**C Clauses of fear**

- These are introduced by a verb of fearing such as **timeo**, **vereor** or **metuo** and the conjunction **ne**. They express fear about something that is happening, may happen or has happened and the verb of the clause is in the **subjunctive**.
- The tense of the subjunctive usually depends upon the sequence of tenses (Unit 63 **J**) but when you come to translate extended passages of Latin, it is always necessary to take account of the context in which these clauses appear in order to get the most appropriate tense in your English translation. For example, **vereor ne captivi necentur** can mean either *I am afraid that (lest) the captives are being killed* or *I am afraid that (lest) the captives may be killed*.
- If the fear is that something will *not* happen, then **ne non** (or sometimes **ut**) is used.

**e.g.** timemus ne milites non adveniant → *we are afraid that the soldiers may not come*

**1 Translate the following into English. They illustrate A opposite.**

**e.g.** *me conducet dum ne stertam* → *he will hire me provided that I do not snore*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a cenent pueri dum se laverint.                       | f illos iuvenes certe vides dummodo puellae quoque adsint. |
| b hodie dormiant fabri dummodo cras strenue laborent. | g pueri fabulam spectent dummodo taceant.                  |
| c invita Caecilium dum fratrem ne ducat.              | h domum explore pueri, dum in illam partem ne erretis.     |
| d stolam eligam dummodo tu eam emas.                  | i maritum eligat filia tua dum eum amet.                   |
| e liberi loquantur dum inter se ne pugnent.           | j canes in atrio ludant dum ne quid frangant.              |

**2 Translate the following into English. They illustrate B opposite.**

**e.g.** *Caesar se gerebat tamquam rex esset* → *Caesar behaved as if he were a king*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a panem pauper consumit velut si non iterum edat.               | f leo in spelunca vero habitat sicut saepe confirmas.         |
| b lupa pueros alebat ut si catuli essent.                       | g iuvenes navigant ceu venti non fortes sint.                 |
| c pueri ludunt sicut viri laborant.                             | h candidatus novas thermas aedificavit ut promisit.           |
| d cur locutus es quasi Catilina non proditor esset?             | i spectatores plausuerunt tamquam fabula conclusa esset.      |
| e filius meus pecuniam impendit velut si patrimonium exceperit. | j poeta viros sapientiores facit sicut magister pueros docet. |

**3 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate C opposite.**

**e.g.** *timesne ne pater nos non eripiat?* → *are you afraid that father may not rescue us?*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a piscatores metuebant ne retia frangerentur.         | f athletae metuunt ne praemia non auferant.                       |
| b duces timent ne novae copiae non adveniant.         | g metuebam ne pecuniam non compararem.                            |
| c veremur ne Titus arcam non inveniatur.              | h Cassius timuerat ne proditor consilium consilibus patefecisset. |
| d pastor veritus est ne agnam lupi cepissent.         | i estne periculum ne capiamur?                                    |
| e magister timebat ne liberi in silvas ambulavissent. | j timebam ne Caesar Rubiconem transiisset.                        |

**4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** *I am afraid that the Trojans may attack* → *timeo ne Troiani oppugnent*

- Rufus carries a sword as though (*tamquam*) he is a soldier.
- Let the young men approach, provided that (*dummodo*) they are unarmed.
- There was a danger that the wall would collapse.
- The conspirator persuaded the assassin just as (*sicut*) the serpent beguiles its prey.
- Let Cicero come in provided that (*dum*) he does not (*ne*) speak.
- Were they afraid that Sulla would find him?
- I shall dine with (*apud*) you tomorrow Titus, provided that your wine is good.

**A Clauses of doubting**

- A clause which expresses positive doubt and is introduced by, e.g. *dubito* (*I doubt*), *dubium est* (*it is doubtful*) or *incertum est* (*it is uncertain*), is treated as an indirect question (Unit 78). The verb of the clause is in the subjunctive.

e.g. *dubium erat utrum Tiberius adveniret necne* → *it was doubtful whether Tiberius would arrive or not*

- Note the phrases *dubito an* (*I am inclined to think that*), and *dubito num* (*I doubt if [or whether]*).

e.g. *dubitavit an Pompeius cederet* → *he was inclined to think that Pompey would yield*

e.g. *dubitavi num de hoc audires* → *I doubted whether you would hear about this*

- When *dubito*, *dubium est* or other expressions of doubt introduce a negative doubt or occur in questions (often accompanied by the archaic *haud* [*not*]), they are followed by a clause introduced by *quin* (*but that or that ... not*), which has its verb in the subjunctive.

e.g. *haud dubium est quin regina captivis parcant* → *there is no doubt but that the queen will spare the prisoners* (or *there is no doubt that the queen will spare the prisoners.*)

e.g. *quis dubitat quin Verres innocens sit?* → *who doubts but that Verres is innocent?*

**B Clauses of hindering, preventing and forbidding**

In English these clauses usually consist of *from* with a participle or an infinitive after *forbid*, e.g. *The storm prevents us from entering the harbour*, *I forbid you to do that*. Compare the indirect command in Unit 79.

- i The verb *veto* (*I forbid*), takes the accusative of the person ordered and a prolativ infinitive (Unit 48 ©) of the action forbidden.

e.g. *Titus vetuit milites oppugnare* → *Titus forbade the soldiers to attack*; or, in more natural English, *Titus told the soldiers not to attack*.

- ii Apart from *veto* and *prohibeo* (*I prevent* – see below), all other verbs of hindering, preventing or forbidding are followed by a clause with a subjunctive verb.

- iii If the main clause contains a positive prohibition, then the subordinate clause is introduced by *ne* or *quominus* (*so that ... not*).

e.g. *luto impedimur ne viam transeamus* → *we are hindered from crossing the road by mud*

- iv If the main clause contains a negative prohibition, e.g. *non impedio* (*I do not hinder*), then the subordinate clause is introduced by *quominus* or *quin*.

e.g. *non nos impedit quin in via ludamus* → *he is not hindering us from playing in the road*

- v The verb *prohibeo* (*I prevent*) can either take the same construction as *veto* or the construction in iii or iv above.

e.g. *prohibuit agricolas agros arare* → *he prevented the farmers from ploughing their fields*



**e.g.** Quintus Fabius milites prohibuit quominus Carthaginienses oppugnarent → *Quintus Fabius prevented the soldiers from attacking the Carthaginians*

**1 Translate the following into English. They illustrate A opposite.**

**e.g.** dubito num tua verba vera sint → *I doubt whether your words are true*

- a dubitaveramus num ad tempus advenires.
- b quis dubitavit quin Cicero servum liberet?
- c dubium est num Carthaginienses re vera victi sint.
- d dubitaverunt num Valerius testamentum scripsisset.
- e incertum est unde advena venerit.
- f dubitavisti an talis candidatus pessimus esset.
- g dubium erat num Ulysses domum rediret.
- h Caesar dubitavit an Cassius non fidelis esset.
- i Cloelia dubitavit an virgines sequerentur.
- j haud dubium erat quin navis demergeretur.

**2 Translate the following into English. They illustrate B opposite.**

**e.g.** Titus non me prohibebit quin cantem → *Titus will not prevent me from singing*

- a Valerius deterruit pueros ne iter longum facerent.
- b magistratus vetuerunt cives legatos accipere.
- c interdictum est nobis ne illum proditorem defendamus.
- d rex captivos non prohibuit quin liberentur.
- e custodes impediabantur quominus portas aperirent.
- f vetabuntne nos sacrificium tangere?
- g centurio prohibuit legionarios diu dormire.
- h oneribus gravibus asini impediuntur quominus pontem transeant.
- i nihil obstat quin nos amici simus.
- j num nos impediēs ne gladiatores videamus?

**3 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** why do you doubt but that Titus loves you? → *cur dubitas quin Titus te amet?*

- a The Gauls were hindered (impedio) from crossing the river by the flood (gurgēs).
- b Portia has forbidden (veto) us to annoy the geese.
- c There is no doubt but that the Romans will burn the village.
- d The omens do not hinder (impedio) the general from setting out.
- e Cornelius, will you prevent (prohibeo) the dogs from attacking my son?
- f We were inclined to think that you (s.) would prefer to leave.
- g I doubt if Servius is able to ride.
- h Certain people doubted whether Augustus would like the poem.
- i Magistrates, prevent (prohibeo) that man from entering the house.
- j It is doubtful whether the workmen have finished the bridge.

**quin** (*but that, that ... not*) is the shortened form of an archaic interrogative adverb **quine** (*how not, why not?*). Apart from being used in clauses of doubting (Unit 72 **A**) and hindering (Unit 72 **B**), **quin** is also used after some other expressions which involve negatives.

**A** Usually **quin** introduces a consecutive clause (Unit 67) and some other clauses, when it is used as the equivalent of **ut ... non**. It is followed by the **subjunctive**.

**e.g.** **nullus tyrannus tam potens est quin deleri possit** → *no tyrant is so powerful that he cannot be destroyed* (or *no tyrant is so powerful but that he can be destroyed*)

**e.g.** **non potest fieri quin hic Verres convincatur** → *it cannot happen that this man Verres is not convicted* (or *it cannot happen but that this man Verres is convicted*)

**B** In expressions like **nemo est quin** (*There is no-one who ... not*), **quin** acts like a relative pronoun followed by **non** (*not*). It is followed by the **subjunctive**.

**e.g.** **nemo est his temporibus quin tale scelus admittere audeat** → *there is no-one in these times who would not dare to commit such a crime*

**C** **quin** can also be used with its original meaning as an adverb (*how not, why not*) to introduce **direct questions** (Unit 62), followed by the **subjunctive**.

**e.g.** **quin nos clementiam de imperatore petamus?** → *why should we not ask for mercy from the general?*

**D** **quin** can be used as an emphasizing adverb at the start of a statement which supports or emphasizes something which has been stated previously. Unusually, in this usage **quin** does not have a negative sense. It may be followed by the **indicative**. It is best translated as *indeed* or *in fact*.

**e.g.** **multos clientes ille patronus habet quin Cassius interest** → *That patron has many clients. In fact Cassius is among them.*

**E** **quin** may be used as an emphasizing adverb to reinforce an imperative. It is best translated as *well* or *well then*.

**e.g.** **quin eos oppugnet, milites!** → *well then, attack them, soldiers!*

**1 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate A and B opposite.**

**e.g.** *nemo est quin domum meam amet* → *there is no-one who does not like my house*

- a nullus miles tam fortiter pugnabat quin praemia mereat.
- b non potest fieri quin Claudius eligatur.
- c nulla femina tam dives erat quin prudens esset.
- d nemo erat quin Alexandrum Magnum sequeretur.
- e nemo est quin Brutum admiretur.
- f nullus puer est tam bonus quin mala mea furetur.
- g non potest fieri quin Caesar dictator fiat.
- h non potest fieri quin Cloelia reddatur.
- i nemo est quin oratori illo credat.
- j nullus dux est tam durus quin captivis parcat.

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate C, D and E opposite.**

**e.g.** *quin Iuliettam petam?* → *why should I not woo Juliet?*

- a quin tribunus consuli resistat?
- b is gladiator notissimus est; quin libertus mox erit.
- c quin serva infantem frater!
- d quin fugitivus hic maneat?
- e iuvenes fortissimi erant; quin Hercules leonem interfecerat.
- f quin emovete gregem pastores.
- g quin mater filium amet?
- h quin agite pueri, pilam capite.
- i quin eam pilam videre potueris?
- j quin eos flores carpamus?

**3 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** *I am not so deaf that I cannot hear you* → *non tam surdus sum quin te audire possim*

- a Caecilius is not so poor that he cannot buy a bigger house.
- b It cannot happen that the treaty is not renewed.
- c There was no-one who did not know about the wedding.
- d No knot is so complicated that it cannot be undone.
- e How should Sextus not believe us?
- f Quintus does not like me; in fact yesterday he insulted me.
- g Why should Felix not sell the horse?
- h There is no soldier who does not fear death.
- i Well then, seize the day, children.
- j How should I not defy (adversor) such a cruel master?

**A** A conditional statement consists of two elements, either of which can appear first:

- A clause, introduced by *si* (if) or *nisi* (unless, if ... not) which contains a condition. This clause is called the **protasis**.
- A main clause containing the consequence of the condition. This is called the **apodosis**.

**B** Conditional sentences are of two kinds:

- A condition which is, was or will be true, and whose consequence will be true in the future, is true in the present or was true in the past is called an **open conditional**. The verb of both clauses is almost always in the **indicative**.
- A possible condition, the result of which is not certain to be fulfilled or cannot possibly be fulfilled is represented in English by the words *would* or *should* in the main clause. In Latin the verb of both clauses is in the **subjunctive**.

**C** The tense of the indicative in an open conditional depends on:

- i If the condition and its consequence refer to the future, then Latin is much more precise than English. As well as using the **future indicative** in the main clause, Latin uses either a **future** or **future perfect indicative** in the protasis. English is rather lazy in these cases and mostly uses the present tense.

*e.g.* **nisi hoc facies numquam thesaurum invenies** → *if you do not do this you will never find the treasure* (lit. If you will not do this ...)

- ii If the condition and its consequence refer to the present, then the **present indicative** is used in both clauses.

*e.g.* **si gaudes nos quoque gaudemus** → *if you are happy, we are also happy*

- iii If the condition and its consequence refer to the past, then both clauses will contain either the **imperfect** or **perfect indicative**.

*e.g.* **si illo favebas, longe errabas** → *if you were supporting that man, you were far wrong*

*e.g.* **si tu hoc fecisti, nos perdidisti** → *if you did this, you have ruined us*

- iv It is possible for the condition to refer to one time while its consequence refers to another.

*e.g.* **si umquam vitam servavisti valde laudandus es** → *if you have ever saved a life you are greatly to be praised*

- v A **pluperfect indicative** verb in the protasis and an **imperfect indicative** verb in the apodosis refer to something which happened frequently.

*e.g.* **si umquam templum viderat statim sacrificare parabat** → *if ever he saw a temple he at once prepared to make a sacrifice*

**D** Occasionally the apodosis contains an **imperative** or a **subjunctive** of will or desire.

*e.g.* **Minotaurum neca, si audes** → *slay the Minotaur if you dare*

*e.g.* **si eis licentiam dedisti exeant** → *if you have given them permission, let them leave*

**1 Translate the following into English. They illustrate C i opposite.**

**e.g.** si hoc feceris omnes delectabis → *if you do this, you will amuse everyone*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a si Metella Aemilio nupserit matres<br>amborum laetae erunt. | f nisi Fabius curret leporem non<br>capiet.               |
| b si Romani Alexandriam ceperint<br>Aegyptum regent.          | g domus certe ruet nisi parietes refecti<br>erunt.        |
| c nisi nos liberabis nihil de amico tuo<br>audies.            | h si imperatori epistulam mittes tibi<br>consilium dabit. |
| d si Aulus magnum piscem capiet eum<br>hodie edemus.          | i Si vacca iuvenum pariet eum non<br>vendam.              |
| e nisi donum mihi cras dederis<br>ululabo.                    | j nisi tu ad me venies ego veniam ad<br>te.               |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate****C ii and iii opposite.**

**e.g.** si paratus es cives manent → *if you are ready, the citizens are waiting*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a nisi pecuniam comparavisti fundum<br>amisimus.      | f nisi Neapolim vidisti plane non<br>vixisti.       |
| b nisi praedones cavebant in magno<br>periculo erant. | g si Clodia te amabat felicissimus eras.            |
| c si vos disceditis nos laeti sumus.                  | h nisi Egnatius ridet uxor misera est.              |
| d si aves canant ver appropinquat.                    | i nisi in agris laborabant totum diem<br>tereabant. |
| e si ullam navem vidimus ad portum<br>cucurrimus.     | j si magistratum vituperavi<br>stultissimus fui.    |

**3 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate****C iv, v and D opposite.**

**e.g.** si te offendi veniam peto → *if I have offended you, I beg your pardon*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a roga matrem, si eam invenire potes.                   | f iuvenis, bibe potionem nisi times.                |
| b nisi ianua clausa est canis effugiet.                 | g si umquam tu me aspectaveras<br>erubesceram.      |
| c si amphoras fractas vendidi pecunia<br>tibi reddetur. | h proditorem neca nisi confitebitur.                |
| d si pueri aberant poenas dabunt.                       | i occasionem cape si tibi offertur.                 |
| e si Quintum Sempronius amat<br>certiorem eum faciat.   | j si illam urbem pulchram vidisti vero<br>felix es. |

**4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** if you see Milo, greet him for me → si Milonem videbis eum saluta pro me

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a If the cook does not burn the<br>peacock, dinner will be excellent.           | f If the bridge has been broken, the<br>army cannot cross.            |
| b If Cyrus has broken the vase, he<br>will be punished.                         | g If Titus shows me the map, I will<br>lead you (pl.) to the cave.    |
| c If you (s.) drink the draught, you<br>will enjoy (utor) eternal youth.        | h If we ever greeted our patron, he<br>gave us dole money (sportula). |
| d The city will be captured unless the<br>ambassador renews the treaty.         | i If Valgus is not in the baths, look<br>(s.) for him in the forum.   |
| e If the captives have not been bound,<br>the guards have neglected their duty. | j If the dogs are asleep, the cat walks<br>proudly around the garden. |

**E** Conditionals which have *would* or *should* in the main clause in English refer to conditions which are only possible or are contrary to known facts, rather than those which are certain. In Latin the verbs of both clauses are in the **subjunctive** and their tenses depend upon the following.

i If the condition and its consequence refer to the future and the condition expresses something which may or may not be fulfilled, a **present subjunctive** is used in both clauses.

**e.g.** *si epistulam legas totam rem intellegas* → *if you were to read the letter, you would understand the whole affair*

ii If appropriate, the **perfect subjunctive** can appear also in the protasis of such sentences.

**e.g.** *si a sociis nostris relictī simus libertatem non servemus* → *if we were deserted by our allies, we would not preserve our freedom*

iii If the condition and its consequence refer to the present and the condition expresses something contrary to known facts, an **imperfect subjunctive** is used in both clauses.

**e.g.** *si vinum biberes ebrius esses* → *if you were (now) drinking wine, you would be drunk*

iv If the condition and its consequence refer to the past and the condition is contrary to known facts, a **pluperfect subjunctive** is used in both clauses.

**e.g.** *si cum Caesare pugnāvisses, eum vero admiratus esses* → *if you had fought with Caesar, you would have admired him*

v It is possible for the condition to refer to one period of time while its consequence refers to another. In such cases the **imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive** are used.

**e.g.** *nisi pater suus dives fuisset numquam Quintus ignavus esset* → *if his father had not been rich, Quintus would never be idle*

**e.g.** *nisi ibi aquas dulces invenirentur milites castra non posuissent* → *if fresh water were not found there, the soldiers would not have pitched camp.*

**F** When conditional clauses are used in an **indirect statement** (Unit 77 **F**), then the verb of the protasis is in the **subjunctive** and the verb of the apodosis becomes an **infinitive**.

i The tense of the **subjunctive** depends upon the **sequence of tenses** (Unit 63 **F**) except that the **imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives** can be used after a present indicative verb introducing the indirect statement.

ii The tense of the **infinitive** of an open conditional depends on the normal rules for indirect statement (Unit 76 **C**).

iii The **infinitive** of a conditional with *would* or *should* is in the **future** tense and is accompanied by *esse*, for conditionals referring to the future, or *fuisse* for those referring to the present or past.

**1 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate E i and ii opposite.**

**e.g.** *si rota fracta sit currus ruat* → *if the wheel were broken, the chariot would crash*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a si flumen latius sit id non transeamus.            | f si vas fractum sit aliquis puniatur.                       |
| b nisi Manlius adsit conventus not fiat.             | g si Cicero loquatur plurimi adsint.                         |
| c si claves amissi sint coniurati domum non intrent. | h si signum detur milites progrediantur.                     |
| d nisi cautus sis capiaris.                          | i si liberi querantur domi maneant.                          |
| e nisi flumen derivetur oppidum inundetur.           | j nisi praetoriani imperatori faveant sine dubio depellatur. |

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate E iii opposite.**

**e.g.** *si sapientior esset vobis parceret* → *if he were wiser, he would spare you*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a nisi Romani essemus togas non gereremus.           | f si in urbe essetis multa spectacula videretis.         |
| b si pater miles esset imperium Romanum defenderet.  | g si iunior essem cum athletic currerem.                 |
| c si minus cautus essem fures intrarent.             | h nisi legati essemus interficeremur.                    |
| d nisi cives superstitiosi essent deos non colerent. | i nisi consules adessent milites minus fortiores essent. |
| e si oppugnareris multi tibi subvenirent.            | j si innocens esses non timeres.                         |

**3 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate E iv and v opposite.**

**e.g.** *si fortior fuisset arcam aperuissem* → *if I had been braver, I would have opened the box*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a nisi Caesar Rubiconem transisset bellum non exarsisset.    | f nisi puer esset latro eum interfecisset.          |
| b si anulum conservavisset invictus esset.                   | g si epistulam scrutati essetis manum agnovissetis. |
| c nisi vocem eius audivissent Publium non invenissent.       | h nisi cibum gustavisset veneno necatus esset.      |
| d nisi Cleopatra pulchra esset Antonius eam non amavisset.   | i si ludos spectavisset Spartacum vidisset.         |
| e si monachus linguam Graecam intellexisset librum legisset. | j si luscinia cecinisset valde delectati essemus.   |

**4 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** *if you were to bribe me, I would support you* → *si me corrumpas tibi faveam*

- a If the senators were to expel you (s.), we ourselves would follow you.  
 b If we had seen the danger, we would not have arrived unarmed.  
 c If the road were wider, the wagons would not be blocked (*intercludo*).  
 d If you (pl.) had not believed Lucius, you would have convicted an innocent man.  
 e If we were to sleep among the tombs, the ghosts would frighten us.  
 f If Larcus were kinder, the slaves would like him.


**A** An indirect statement is a reported statement which is introduced either by an impersonal verb (Unit 56) or a verb of saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing, believing or denying. For example, **direct statement** (i.e. the original statement): *the river is teeming with fish*. **Indirect statement** (i.e. the reported statement): *the angler says that the river is teeming with fish*. Or *I can see that the river is teeming with fish*.

**B** In English we commonly use the conjunction *that* to link the main clause with the indirect statement, although we can leave it out, e.g. *they saw the river was teeming with fish*. In either case the indirect statement has its own finite verb.

However, we could also say *we know the river to be teeming with fish*. In this example the subject of the indirect statement (*river*) has become the object (in the **accusative**) of the main verb (*we know*), while the verb of the indirect statement has changed from a finite verb into an **infinitive** (*to be teeming*). This is how the Romans used to express themselves and that is why the indirect statement is often called the **accusative and infinitive** construction in Latin. The negative form is introduced by *nego* -are -avi -atum (*I say that ... not, I deny*).

**C** The tense of the infinitive in an indirect statement is the same as the tense of the original (direct) statement, regardless of the tense of the introductory verb. The tense of the verb of the indirect statement in English *does* depend upon the tense of the introductory verb. You will need to find the correct tense according to the contexts set out below, depending on whether the introductory verb is in the present or future (a) or the past (b).

i A **present infinitive** is used in place of the present tense verb in the original statement. If the original statement is *he is carrying* or *he is being carried*, then the indirect forms are:


 (a) *puto eum portare* → *I think that he is carrying*

(a) *dicemus eum portari* → *we shall say that he is being carried*

(b) *dixi eum portare* → *I have said that he is carrying*

(b) *crediderunt eum portari* → *they believed that he was being carried*

ii A **future infinitive** is used in place of a future tense verb in the original statement. If the original statement is *he will carry* or *he will be carried*, then the indirect forms are:

 (a) *nego eum portaturum esse* → *I say that he will not carry*

(a) *sciunt eum portatum iri* → *they know that he will be carried*

(b) *dicebas eum portaturum esse* → *you used to say that he would carry*

(b) *videramus eum portatum iri* → *we had seen that he would be carried*

iii A **perfect infinitive** is used in place of any past tense verb in the original statement. If the original statement is *he was carrying* or *he was carried* then the indirect forms are:



**e.g.** (a) *sentimis eum portatum esse* → *we sense that he was carried*

(a) *dicam eum portavisse* → *I shall say that he carried*

(b) *audivistine eum portatum esse?* → *did you hear that he had been carried?*

(b) *negabamus eum portavisse* → *we denied that he had carried*

iv In the case of future active and perfect passive (and deponent) infinitives, the part of the infinitive which declines agrees in number, gender and case with the accusative it refers to.

**e.g.** *Valerius dicit eam cras navigaturam esse* → *Valerius says that she will sail tomorrow*

**1 Translate the following into English. They illustrate C i opposite.**

**e.g.** *dixit catellas in horto ludere* → *he said that the puppies were playing in the garden*

a *nuntiavimus navem desertam*

*appropinquare.*

b *saepe dico eam felicem esse.*

c *Galli negaverunt Druides celari.*

d *dicam te vestiri.*

e *putasne Septimum animalia alere?*

f *num dixisti custodes dormire?*

g *negat Catilinam innocentem esse.*

h *videbitis me fortissimum esse.*

i *cives credunt vos praetermitti.*

j *omnes sciunt Carthaginienses*

*perfidios esse.*

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate C ii opposite.**

**e.g.** *video Titum pulchrum fore (or futurum esse)* → *I see that Titus is going to be handsome*

a *sciebamus coniuratos necatum iri.*

b *puto Catilinam nos relicturum esse.*

c *putasne meas fabulas ab actoribus notissimis actum iri?*

d *sciverasne Marium comprehensum iri?*

e *nonne videtis Gallos vicum censuros esse?*

f *negabas Caesarem dictatorem fore.*

g *praedones non crediderunt insulam defensum iri.*

h *dux nuntiavit exercitum statim profecturum esse.*

i *tibi dixi Helenam cras discessuram esse.*

j *negat puellam lectum iri.*

**3 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate C iii opposite.**

**e.g.** *dicit rationes probatas esse* → *he says that the accounts have been approved*

a *dicisne eam Tiberio nupsisse?*

b *scimus agricolas vacas omnes vendidisse.*

c *putabamus patriam a Cicerone servatam esse.*

d *nonne vides hunc equum lautum esse?*

e *exploratores nuntiaverunt novas copias advenisse.*

f *negabimus senem aurum invenisse.*

g *Valerius dixit haruspitem mentitum esse.*

h *negasne te hanc feminam umquam vidisse?*

i *videmus hospites bene oblectatos esse.*

j *custodes negabant captivum vinctum esse.*

**D** When the reflexive pronoun *se* (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*) (Unit 39 **E**) and the possessive pronoun *suus -a -um* (*his, her, its, their*) (Unit 39 **C**) appear in an indirect statement then they refer to the subject of the **main clause**, whereas, e.g. *eum* or *eius* would refer to someone other than the subject of the main clause.

**e.g.** *custos dicit se discessurum esse* → *the guard says that he (himself) is going to leave*

**e.g.** *custos dicit eum discessurum esse* → *the guard says that he (someone else) is going to leave*

**E** The word *esse* is frequently omitted from perfect and future infinitives in an indirect statement.

**e.g.** *prima luce Caesar Pompeium necatum scivit* → *at first light Cæsar knew that Pompey had been killed*

**F** The infinitive of an indirect statement can govern its own construction (see e.g. Unit 75 **F**).

**e.g.** *negat se velle equum conscendere* → *he says he is not willing to mount a horse*

**e.g.** *dixit fabros arcum perfecturos fuisse si strenue laboravissent* → *he said that the workmen would have finished the arch if they had worked hard*

**G** Indirect statements can depend upon impersonal verbs.

**e.g.** *constat omnes cives idem consilium cepisse* → *it is agreed that all the citizens adopted the same plan*

**H** Indirect statements introduced by verbs of hoping, promising, threatening and swearing take the accusative and future infinitive.

**e.g.** *speramus te mox adventurum esse* → *we hope that you will arrive soon*

**I** The accusative and infinitive construction can also be found after the verbs *iubeo* (*I order*), *veto* (*I forbid*), *patior* and *sino* (*I allow*).

**e.g.** *vos vetamus illos captivos tangere* → *we forbid you to touch those captives*

**J** The construction can also follow *volo* (*I want*), *nolo* (*I do not want*), *malo* (*I prefer*) and *cupio* (*I desire*), if the subject of the indirect statement is different from the subject of the main verb.

**e.g.** *malo te fundum colere* → *I prefer you to tend to the farm*

**K** It may also follow verbs of rejoicing and grieving.

**e.g.** *hostes victos esse gaudebant* → *they were rejoicing that the enemy had been beaten*

**1** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate **D** opposite.

**e.g.** Caesar dixit suos Gallos superaturos esse → *Caesar said his men would beat the Gauls*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a Quintus sciebat se poenas pro scelere suo non daturum esse. | f milites negaverunt se effugisse.                   |
| b Marius putabat se necatum iri.                              | g Egnatius dicit se a praedonibus spoliatum esse.    |
| c Cato iuvenem castigavit et dixit se eum incusatum esse.     | h senatores nuntiaverant se Pompeium electuros esse. |
| d cives nesciunt se a Tarquinio deceptos esse.                | i Sempronia putavit se cultrum invenisse.            |
| e Marcus negavit se arborem succidisse.                       | j scriba negat se haec verba scripsisse.             |

**2** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate **E**, **F** and **G** opposite.

**e.g.** fossor scit aurum ibi inventum → *the miner knows that gold has been found there*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a dictum est Romanos bello intractabiles esse. | g nesciebamus te picturam picturum.   |
| b nego nos captum iri si lente ambulemus.      | h negatum erat Augustum aegrum esse.  |
| c negavistine te captum?                       | i non putabam cives Cornelium umquam electuros fuisse nisi ab eo corrupti essent. |
| d Horatius dixit se pontem custoditurum.       | j scio te tutum futurum esse si mea verba respicias.                              |
| e constat Marium Romam servavisse.             |   |
| f dictum est delphinum in portum navisse.      |   |

**3** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate **H**, **I**, **J** and **K** opposite.

**e.g.** spero vos semper felices fore (or futuros esse) → *I hope that you will always be fortunate*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a nonne promittes te mecum iter facturum esse?           | f magistratus vetavit pistores collegium condere. |
| b hostes minantur se urbem incensuros esse.              | g sperabamus vos fundum empturos esse.            |
| c iuro me semper fidelem fore.                           | h Publius gaudet avum suum convalescere.          |
| d patronus pollicitus est se dona clientis daturum esse. | i volo te aquam de fonte portare.                 |
| e iubesne me ab urbe discedere?                          | j lugemus Ciceronem necatum esse.                 |

**4** Translate the following sentences into Latin.

**e.g.** Lucius thinks he is being watched by a gnome → *Lucius putat se a terricula spectari*

- Calpurnia thinks she will be attacked by the dog.
- Catullus knows that he loves Clodia.
- I know that the fox will escape if the gate is opened.
- It has been said that Nero killed his own mother.
- They have promised that the new statue is not going to fall.
- Do you (s.) forbid me to eat beans?
- They are unwilling for us to see the new carpet.

**A** An indirect question is a reported question which is introduced by a verb of questioning, enquiring, knowing or telling, and the same interrogative word which introduced the direct question, except that **num** (*if, whether*), may be used to replace the interrogative ending **-ne** (see Unit 62 **A**). Note that the word **num** means something else when it introduces a direct question (see Unit 62 **A**).

For example, **direct question** (i.e. the original question): *How did they do that?* **Indirect question** (i.e. the reported question): *We asked how they did that.*

**B** The verb of the indirect question is in the **subjunctive**. Its tense depends upon its context, the tense of the original question and the tense of the main (introductory) verb. As a general rule, the sequence of tenses (Unit 63 **J**) is followed, although there is a greater variety of subjunctive tenses available for use in the indirect question. Just remember that a **primary** verb in the main clause is always followed by a **primary subjunctive** verb in the indirect question and a **historic** verb in the main clause is always followed by a **historic subjunctive** in the indirect question. Bear in mind also the difference between the perfect tense with 'have' (primary) and the perfect tense without 'have' (historic).

i If the main verb is **primary**, then the verb of the indirect question will be in the **present subjunctive** if the original question was of the present (a), in the **perfect subjunctive** if the original question was of the past (b), and in the composite 'future subjunctive' (see Unit 52 **A**) if the original question was of the future (c).

**Original question**

(a) quis est? → *Who is it?*

(b) quis fuit? → *Who was it?*

(c) quis erit? → *Who will it be?*

**Possible main verb Indirect question**

rogo → *I ask*

rogabo → *I shall ask*

rogavi → *I have asked*

rogavero → *I shall have asked*

roga → *ask*

(a) quis sit → *who it is*

(b) quis fuerit → *who it was*

(c) quis futurus sit → *who it will be*

ii If the main verb is **historic** then the verb of the indirect question will be in the **imperfect subjunctive** if the original question was of the present (a), in the **pluperfect subjunctive** if the original question was of the past (b), and in the composite 'future perfect subjunctive' (see Unit 52 **A**) if the original question was of the future (c).

**Original question**

(a) quis est? → *Who is it?*

(b) quis fuit? → *Who was it?*

(c) quis erit? → *Who will it be?*

**Possible main verb**

rogabam → *I was asking*

rogavi → *I asked*

rogaveram → *I had asked*

**Indirect question**

(a) quis esset → *who it was*

(b) quis fuisset → *who it had been*

(c) quis futurus esset → *who it would be*

**C** When the indirect question offers a negative alternative, then *necne* (or *not*) is used.

**e.g.** *iudex rogavit num Bruti filius patriam prodidisset necne* → *the judge asked whether the son of Brutus had betrayed his country or not*

**1** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate

**B i** opposite and **C** above.

**e.g.** *Tullia rogat cur feles in culina ludat* → *Tullia asks why the cat is playing in the kitchen*

- a Caelia rogat num fabri cras laboraturi sint.
- b rogabo num Hortensius liberos ducturus sit necne.
- c rogavi quando regina advenerit.
- d Tullius rogabit Decimum num aurum inventum sit.
- e Decius non vult rogare quomodo id acciderit.
- f pueri, rogate matrem num poetam audire velit.
- g rogavistine me num laetus sim?
- h rogavimus num Servius Caeciliam amet necne?
- i tribuni rogabunt quis consilium patefacturus sit.
- j roga quot plastra sint.

**2** Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate

**B ii** opposite and **C** above.

**e.g.** *rogavi ubi aurum inventum esset* → *I asked where the gold had been found*

- a rogavimus cur puellae non cantarent.
- b fossores rogaverunt num mercedes accepturi essent necne.
- c num rogavisti num Titus Liviam osculatus esset?
- d non rogaveram quem dux electurus esset.
- e Romulus non rogavit quid accidisset.
- f ductor nos rogaverat quomodo iter faceremus.
- g semper rogabant quando ibi adventuri essent.
- h rogaveramus quotiens Marius consul fuisset.
- i nonne Sulla rogavit num exercitus victus esset?

**3** Translate the following sentences into Latin.

**e.g.** *I shall ask whether the guests have arrived* → *rogabo num hospites advenerint*

- a Have you (s.) asked whether the gates are closed or not?
- b Ask (s.) whether the boys are working in the garden.
- c We used to ask whether the statue was alive.
- d He had asked whether you (s.) were a farmer.
- e The citizens are asking who will be queen.
- f Did he ask if I had been wounded?
- g They are asking whether the dinner is ready.
- h I had asked whether Marius would arrive.
- i The maidservant is asking whether you (s.) are asleep or not.

**A** An indirect command (see also Unit 72 **B**) is a reported command which can be introduced not only by a verb of commanding or demanding but also by any verb which implies an act of the will, like verbs of decreeing, persuading, requesting, warning, entreating, permitting, urging, encouraging, taking care (that) and resolving and some impersonal verbs. In English the indirect command is usually expressed by an infinitive.

For example, **direct command** (i.e. the original command): *Open the doors.*

**Indirect command** (i.e. the reported command): *I told him to open the doors.*

**B** In Latin, an indirect command which is introduced by any of the verbs *iubeo* (*I order*), *veto* (*I forbid, I order ... not*), *sino* (*I allow*) and *patior* (*I allow*), has its verb in the **infinitive**, as in English.

**e.g.** *eum vetui hoc facere* → *I forbade him to do this* (or: *I told him not to do this*)

**C** Other indirect commands in Latin are introduced by **ut** (negative: **ne**) and a verb in the **subjunctive** which is the equivalent of an infinitive or a 'that' clause in English. The tense of the subjunctive depends upon the **sequence of tenses** (Unit 63 **U**).

- If the verb of the main clause is **primary** (in the imperative or the present, future, future perfect or perfect with 'have'), then the verb of the indirect command will be in the **present subjunctive**.

**e.g.** *philosophi nos persuadent ut pacem amemus* → *philosophers persuade us to love peace*

- If the verb of the main clause is **historic** (perfect without 'have', imperfect or pluperfect), then the verb of the indirect command will be in the **imperfect subjunctive**.

**e.g.** *agricola saepe te monebat ne mala surriperes* → *the farmer often used to warn you not to steal the apples*

- Sometimes the word **ut** is omitted after *rogo* (*I ask*), *moneo* (*I warn*), *suadeo* (*I persuade*), *impero* (*I order*), *curo* (*I take care [that]*), *neccesse est* (*it is necessary*), *licet* (*it is allowed*) and *oportet* (*it behoves*).

**e.g.** *moneo vos quam celerrime discedatis* → *I warn you to depart as quickly as possible*

**D** An indirect wish is a reported wish (compare clauses of fear in Unit 71 **C**). It is introduced by a verb of wishing like *cupio* (*I desire*), *opto* (*I choose*), *volo* (*I want*), *nolo* (*I do not want*) or *malo* (*I prefer*) and by the conjunction **ut** (negative: **ne**) and a **subjunctive** verb. (Some of these verbs also take the accusative and infinitive construction. See Unit 77 **U**). The verb of the indirect wish is an optative subjunctive (Unit 54 **A**). Present and perfect subjunctives are used to refer to wishes for the future,

the imperfect subjunctive is used to refer to wishes for the present and the pluperfect subjunctive is used to refer to wishes for the past.

**e.g.** cupivit ut tu mansisses → *he wished that you had stayed*

**1 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate A, B and C opposite.**

**e.g.** mandata eis dedi ut collem ascendam → *I have given them orders to climb the hill*

- a anus regem monet ut libros emat.
- b Stephanus domino persuasit ut Furium manumitteret.
- c Holconius curat ut novae thermae aedificentur.
- d Sextus vetabatur potionem tangere.
- e agricolae postulabunt ut rex se abdicet.
- f hortati sumus Plautum ut fabulas scriberet.
- g iuebimus Terentium cenam coquere.
- h Iuppiter Minervam permiserat ut Graecis subveniret.
- i mater nos sinet pullos agitare.
- j imperavit nobis ut pavimentum lavemus.

**2 Translate the following sentences into English. They illustrate D opposite.**

**e.g.** cupit ut tu ibi nunc adesces → *he wishes that you were there now*

- a cupimus ut pater ursum nobis demonstret.
- b optaveramus ne Lucius ebrius esset.
- c volo ut tu mihi nubas.
- d Cicero cupivit ut Catilina interfectus esset.
- e omnes malumus ut tu domi maneas.
- f baiuli cupiunt ne onera gravia sint.
- g volo ut anulum invenissem.
- h voluisti ut Cato electus esset.
- i visne ut thesaurus inventus esset?
- j Hadrianus cupit ut murus aedificetur.

**3 Translate the following sentences into Latin.**

**e.g.** *he has warned the citizens not to expect much* → **cives monuit ne multa exspectent**

- a I demand (postulo) that you (s.) free the slave.
- b They are urging (hortor) us to attack the camp.
- c I took care (curo) that the togas would not be dirty.
- d Order (impero) (s.) the guard not to sleep.
- e I implore (obsecro) you (pl.) not to kill Caesar.
- f We warned (moneo) you (s.) not to wander into the woods.
- g We desire (cupio) that you (s.) depart from the palace.
- h They had forbidden (veto) the boys to swim in the river.
- i She had persuaded (persuadeo) him to eat the apple.
- j We shall permit (permitto) them to buy the horse.

**A** Roman years can be reckoned *Ab Urbe Condita* (from the founding of the city [literally from the founded city]). This is often abbreviated to **AUC**. 753 years must be added to a date CE while a date BCE must be taken away from 754 to get the Roman year.

e.g. **MMDCCLIV AUC** → 2754 years from the founding of the city → 2001 CE

Years after the institution of the republic in 510 BCE can also be recorded as 'the year in which x and y were consuls'. In such phrases the names of the consuls are in an ablative absolute with the word **consulibus** (sometimes abbreviated to **co**) (see Unit 70 **F**).

e.g. **P. Cornelio Scipione Ti. Sempronio Longo co.** → *When Publius Cornelius Scipio and Tiberius Sempronius Longus were consuls.* → 218 BCE.

**B** The Roman year was divided into 12 months. The titles of the months are adjectives used in agreement with the implied word **mensis** (*month*), or the special days mentioned in **C** below. Most of them are the words we still use. The names Quintilis and Sextilis were changed in honour of Julius Caesar and Augustus.

Januarius -a -um	Julius -a -um (Quintilis -is -e)
Februarius -a -um	Augustus -a -um (Sextilis -is -e)
Martius -a -um	September -bris
Aprilis -is -e	October -bris
Maius -a -um	November -bris
Junius -a -um	December -bris

**C** Roman months were 29 and 30 days long alternately. They had no equivalent of a week but did divide their months up into periods between three significant days in each month. The names of these days are feminine and plural:

- **Kalendae -arum** *the Kalends*. The first day of the month.
- **Nonae -arum** *the Nones*. The seventh day of March, July, October and May, but the fifth day of the other months.
- **Idus -uum** *the Ides*. The fifteenth day of March, July, October and May, but the thirteenth day of the other months.

If a date is one of these days, it is expressed in the ablative with the adjective of the month in agreement with it. It is also normally abbreviated.

e.g. **Id(ibus) Mar(tiis)** → *on the Ides of March* → on 15th March

If a date is the day before one of these days, it is expressed by **pridie** ([on] *the day before*), followed by the accusative of the day. It is sometimes abbreviated to **prid**.

e.g. **prid. Non(as) Mar(tias)** → *on the day before the Nones of March* → on 6th April.



All other dates are reckoned as being so many days *ante diem* (*before the next named day*, normally abbreviated to *a.d.*). The whole phrase is in the accusative. Unusually, when the Romans calculated this they included both the date and the named day in the interval.

**163** *a.d. III Non. Mar.* → *ante diem tertium Nonas Martias* → *three days before the Nones of March* (including the Nones and the date mentioned) → on 5th March

**D** The following sample months are enough to give a guide to the dates of any month in the year. They have been modified for the Gregorian calendar with months of 30 or 31 days.

April	May	April	May
1st Kal. Apr.	Kal. Mai.	17th a.d. XV Kal. Mai.	a.d. XVI Kal. Iun.
2nd a.d. IV Non. Apr.	a.d. VI Non. Mai.	18th a.d. XIV Kal. Mai.	a.d. XV Kal. Iun.
3rd a.d. III Non. Apr.	a.d. V Non. Mai.	19th a.d. XIII Kal. Mai.	a.d. XIV Kal. Iun.
4th prid. Non. Apr.	a.d. IV Non. Mai.	20th a.d. XII Kal. Mai.	a.d. XIII Kal. Iun.
5th Non. Apr.	a.d. III Non. Mai.	21st a.d. XI Kal. Mai.	a.d. XII Kal. Iun.
6th a.d. VIII Id. Apr.	prid. Non. Mai.	22nd a.d. X Kal. Mai.	a.d. XI Kal. Iun.
7th a.d. VII Id. Apr.	Non. Mai.	23rd a.d. IX Kal. Mai.	a.d. X Kal. Iun.
8th a.d. VI Id. Apr.	a.d. VIII Id. Mai.	24th a.d. VIII Kal. Mai.	a.d. IX Kal. Iun.
9th a.d. V Id. Apr.	a.d. VII Id. Mai.	25th a.d. VII Kal. Mai.	a.d. VIII Kal. Iun.
10th a.d. IV Id. Apr.	a.d. VI Id. Mai.	26th a.d. VI Kal. Mai.	a.d. VII Kal. Iun.
11th a.d. III Id. Apr.	a.d. V Id. Mai.	27th a.d. V Kal. Mai.	a.d. VI Kal. Iun.
12th prid. Id. Apr.	a.d. IV Id. Mai.	28th a.d. IV Kal. Mai.	a.d. V Kal. Iun.
13th Id. Apr.	a.d. III Id. Mai.	29th a.d. III Kal. Mai.	a.d. IV Kal. Iun.
14th a.d. XVIII Kal. Mai.	prid. Id. Mai.	30th prid. Kal. Mai.	a.d. III Kal. Iun.
15th a.d. XVII Kal. Mai.	Id. Mai.	31st	prid. Kal. Iun.
16th a.d. XVI Kal. Mai.	a.d. XVII		

**E** The Romans frequently had to add days or even months to years in order to make up for the difference between their calendar year and the solar year and in 45 BCE Julius Caesar revised their calendar. In the leap years 24th February (*a.d. VI Kal. Mar.*) was counted twice and called *dies bissextus*.

**F** After Constantine legalized Christianity the seven days of the week officially acquired Latin names in 321 CE. Some of these survive in modern European Romance languages today. Even English still has Saturday.

<i>dies Solis</i>	<i>day of the sun</i>	Sunday
<i>dies Lunae</i>	<i>day of the moon</i>	Monday
<i>dies Martis</i>	<i>day of Mars</i> (god of war)	Tuesday
<i>dies Mercuri</i>	<i>day of Mercury</i> (the messenger god)	Wednesday
<i>dies Iovis</i>	<i>day of Jupiter</i> (king of the gods)	Thursday
<i>dies Veneris</i>	<i>day of Venus</i> (goddess of love)	Friday
<i>dies Saturni</i>	<i>day of Saturn</i> (father of Jupiter)	Saturday

**A Money**

It is impossible to give modern equivalents for the value of money in ancient times. Not only did it fluctuate considerably during the centuries of Roman history but also the value of today's currency is soon out of date itself. It is possible to get an idea of the value from contemporary writers.

- The **as** (as *assis* m.) (*unit*), was the coin of lowest value.
- Two and a half asses was worth one **sestertius** (-i m.), a word formed from **semis tertius** (*the third half*, i.e. 2.5). We usually call this a **sesterce** in English. The symbol for a sesterce was **HS**, an abbreviation for **duo et semis** → *two and a half* (asses). Sometimes the word **nummus** (-i m.) (*coin*), was also used for the sesterce.
- Four sestertii made one **denarius**.
- Twenty-five denarii made one **aureus**.

**B** The sesterce was a unit of currency which was mentioned very frequently with reference to large prices or sums of money.

- When expressing thousands of sesterces the Romans used the special neuter plural word **sestertia** (*thousands of sesterces*), with a distributive numeral (Unit 38 **F**).

*e.g.* HS **V** → **quina sestertia** → *five thousand sesterces*

- When expressing hundreds of thousands of sesterces the Romans used the genitive plural **sestertium** (with *centena milia* understood) with a numeral adverb (Unit 38 **G**).

*e.g.* HS **IXI** → **decies sestertium** → *one million* (10 x 100,000) *sesterces*

**C** The Romans also made use of Greek (silver) units of currency.

- The smallest unit commonly mentioned by the Romans is the **drachma**.
- One hundred drachmae made one **mina**.
- Sixty minae made one **talentum** (*talent*).

**D Weight**

- The smallest unit was the **scrupulum** (*Roman scruple*).
- Four scrupula made one **sextula**.
- Six sextulae made one **uncia** (*Roman ounce*).
- Twelve unciae made one **libra** (*Roman pound*, about 11.5 English ounces or 326 grams).

**E Liquid capacity**

- The smallest unit was the **cochlearium**.
- Four cochlearia made one **cyathus**.
- Twelve cyathi made one **sextarius** (a little less than an English pint or about half a litre).

- Six sextarii made one **congius**.
- Eight congii made one **amphora**.
- Twenty amphorae made one **culleus**.

### **F Dry capacity**

- The smallest unit was the **cochlearium**.
- Four cochlearia made one **cyathus**.
- Twelve cyathi made one **sextarius**.
- Eight sextarii made one **semodius**.
- Two semodii made one **modius** (two English gallons or about nine litres).

### **G Length**

- The smallest unit was the **uncia** (*Roman inch*).
- Twelve unciae made one **pes** (*Roman foot*, which was slightly less than an English foot or about 30 centimetres).
- Eighteen unciae (1.5 pedes) made a **cubitum** (*Roman cubit*).
- Five pedes made one **passus** (*Roman yard* [pace]).
- One hundred and twenty-five passus made one **stadium** (*Roman furlong*).
- Eight stadia made one **mille passus** (*Roman mile* [1,000 paces]; about 1,620 English yards or 1,481 metres).

### **H Area**

- The smallest unit was the **pes quadratus** (*square foot*).
- One hundred pedes quadrati made one **scripulum** or **decempeda quadrata** (*ten feet square*).
- One hundred and forty-four scripula made one **actus quadratus**.
- Two actus quadrati made one **iugerum** (*Roman acre*, about five-eighths of an English acre or 2,529 square metres).
- Two iugera made one **heredium**.
- One hundred heredia made one **centuria**.

**A Personal names**

A Roman man had three names: a **praenomen**, a **nomen** and a **cognomen**, in that order, e.g. Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus. Some even had a fourth or fifth name (**agnomen**).

The **praenomen** (*forename*), is an individual name used by family and close friends. There are not many to choose from and they are written in an abbreviated form when the other names are given. The commonest are:

A. Aulus	P. Publius
C. Gaius	Q. Quintus
Cn. Gnaeus	Ser. Servius
D. Decimus	S. (or Sex.) Sextus
L. Lucius	Sp. Spurius
M. Marcus	T. Titus
M'. Manius	Ti. (or Tib.) Tiberius
N. Numerius	

The **nomen** (*name*), is the **gens** (*clan*, extended family) name and usually ends in **-ius**. Famous Roman clans are the Claudii, Sempronii, Cornelii, Iulii and Iunii.

The **cognomen** (*surname*), is the **familia** (*family*) name. Originally cognomina were individual nicknames, often descriptive of appearance, e.g. Rufus → Redhead, Naso → Big nose, Caligula → Little boots, etc. Eventually cognomina became hereditary and were used to distinguish one branch of a clan from another.

An **agnomen** is a further name added onto the cognomen. It is used either:

- As a title of honour, like Augustus → Majestic (His Majesty), Africanus → Conqueror of Africa, Numidicus → Conqueror of Numidia or Macedonicus → Conqueror of Macedonia, etc.
- Or
- As a sign that a person has been adopted into their current gens from another gens. These agnomina of adoption usually end in **-ianus**. The emperor Augustus' **nomen** was originally Octavius. After he had been adopted by his uncle Julius Caesar and granted the title Augustus by the senate he was called Gaius Iulius Caesar Octavianus Augustus.

Roman women generally only used one name; the feminine form of their **nomen**, e.g. Claudia, Sempronia, Cornelia, Iulia and Iunia. If there was a number of sisters in a family then the eldest was called **Maior** (*the Elder*), the second **Minor** (*the Younger*), the third **Tertia** (*the Third*), **Quarta** (*the Fourth*), etc.

Freedmen (ex-slaves) would take their ex-master's **nomen** and add their own **cognomen**, e.g. M. ARTORIUS M. L. PRIMUS ARCHITECTUS → Marcus Artorius Primus, freedman (**libertus**) of Marcus (Artorius): Architect (Inscription in the theatre in Pompeii)

When we write Latin names in English we use anglicized versions of the names of those authors and personalities who are more familiar to us, e.g. Vergil (or Virgil) for Vergilius, Horace for Horatius, Ovid for Ovidius, Pliny for Plinius and Livy for Livius.

## **B Place names**

These are classical Latin place names, not mediaeval ones.

The Adriatic Sea → mare superum	France (Gaul) → Gallia
The Aegean Sea → mare Aegaeum	Genoa → Genua
Africa → Libya, Africa	Germany → Germania
Alexandria → Alexandria	The Straits of Gibraltar → fretum Gaditanum
The Alps → Alpes (f. pl.)	Greece → Graecia
Anglesey → Mona	Holland → Batavi (m. pl.)
Antioch → Antiocha	Ireland → Hibernia
The Apennines → mons Apenninus	Italy → Italia
Athens → Athenae (f. pl.)	Jerusalem → Hierosolyma (n. pl.)
Avignon → Avenio (f.)	Lebanon → Libanus
Babylon → Babylon (f.)	Lincoln → Lindum
The Balearic Is. → Baliares insulae (f. pl.)	London → Londinium
Barcelona → Barcino (f.)	Lyons → Lugdunum
Bath → Aquae Sulis	Malta → Melita
Belgium → Belgae (m. pl.)	Marseilles → Massilia
The Black Sea → Pontus (Euxinus)	Milan → Mediolanum
Bologna → Bononia	Morocco → Mauretania
Brindisi → Brundisium	Naples → Neapolis (f.)
Britain → Britannia	Nice → Nicaea
Brittany → Armoricae (f. pl.)	The R. Nile → Nilus
Cadiz → Gades (f. pl.)	Padua → Patavium
Caerleon → Isca	Paris → Lutetia
Campagna → Campania	The R. Po → Padus
Canterbury → Durovernum	Portugal → Lusitania
Capri → Capreae (f. pl.)	Pozzuoli → Puteoli (m. pl.)
Cartagena → Carthago Nova	Provence → Provincia
Carthage → Carthago (f.)	The Pyrenees → Pyrenaei montes (m. pl.)
Chester → Deva	The Red Sea → sinus Arabicus
Chichester → Regnum	The R. Rhine → Rhenus
China → Seres (m. pl.)	Rhodes → Rhodos (f.)
Girencester → Corinium	The R. Rhone → Rhodanus
Colchester → Camulodunum	Rome → Roma
Constantinople (Istanbul) → Byzantium	St. Albans → Verulamium
Cordoba → Corduba	Scotland → Caledonia
Corfu → Corcyra	The R. Severn → Sabrina
Corinth → Corinthus	Seville → Hispalis
Crete → Creta	Sicily → Sicilia
Cyrene → Cyrenae (f. pl.)	Spain → Hispania
The (Lower) R. Danube → Ister	Switzerland → Helvetia
The Dardanelles → Hellespontus	The R. Thames → Tamesis (m.)
Dover → Dubri (m. pl.)	Thebes → Thebae (f. pl.)
The Straits of Dover → fretum Gallicum	The R. Tiber → Tiberis (m.)
Egypt → Aegyptus (-i f.)	Tuscany → Etruria
Mt. Etna → Aetna	Venice → Veneti (m. pl.)
Florence → Florentia	York → Eburacum

We have no original Latin literary documents but we have many examples of Latin written on walls or stone which come under the technical title **epigraphy**. They are generally graffiti or inscriptions and are valuable evidence for contemporary Latin usage and spelling. As there was always a limited space to fill abbreviations were common. These are from Pompeii:

• **Record of the building of the amphitheatre c.70 BCE**

Quinctius C[aii] f[ilius] Valgus M[arcus] Porcius M[arci] f[ilius] duovir[i] quinq[uiennales] coloniai honoris caussa spectacula de sua pec[un]ia fac[i]unda coer[arunt] et coloneis locum in perpetuom deder[unt] → *Quinctius Valgus, son of Gaius, [and] Marcus Porcius, son of Marcus, censors (quinquennual duoviri), for the honour of the colony took care that a showground be built out of their own money and they gave the place to the colonists for ever.* Note the spelling of *coloniai* for *coloniae*, *caussa* for *causa*, *pecunia* for *pecunia*, *coerarunt* for *curaverunt*, *coloneis* for *colonis* and *perpetuom* for *perpetuum*. *Showground* (*spectacula*) is used instead of *amphitheatrum*. Note the confidence of in *perpetuom* (*for ever*).

• **A graffito scratched on the wall of the basilica**

C[aius] Pumidius Dipilus heic fuit a[n]te d[iem] v Nonas Octobreis M[arco] Lepid[o] Q[uinto] Catul[o] co[n]s[ulibus] → *G. Pumidius Dipilus was here on October 3rd when M. Lepidus and Q. Catulus were consuls (78 BCE).* Note the old spelling of *heic* for *hic* and *Octobreis* for *Octobris*, and the way of dating a year.

• **On the colonnade in front of the Eumachia building (fullers' guild)**

Eumachia L[uci] f[ilia] sacerdos publ[ica] nomine suo et M[arci] Numistri Frontonis fili chalcidicum cryptam porticum Concordiae Augustae Pietati sua pecunia fecit eademque dedicavit → *Eumachia, daughter of Lucius, public priestess, had the vestibule, covered walkway and colonnade built with her own money in her name and that of her son Marcus Numistrius Fronto and dedicated the same to the Pietas Concordia Augusta* This prominent local woman was not only enhancing the fullers' guild with her generosity but also her son's social standing. The dedication associates her with Augustus' political outlook.

• **On the plinth of a statue of Holconius in the Via dell' Abbondanza**

M[arco] Holconio M[arci] f[ilio] Rufo trib[uno] mil[itum] a populo duovir[o] i[ur]e d[i]cundo v quinque[n]n[al]i iter[um] Augusti Caesaris sacerdos patr[on]o coloniae → *To Marcus Holconius Rufus, son of Marcus, tribune of the soldiers [chosen] by the people, duumvir with the right of pronouncing [judgement] five times, censor a second time, priest of Augustus Caesar, patron of the colony*

Most of the abbreviations are standard for inscriptions. Holconius is in the dative because the statue was put up in honour of (to) him. Notice the old form *dicundo* for *dicendo*. A censor (*quinquennalis*) was elected every five years. To be patron of the colony was the highest honour a man could have,

rather like having the freedom of a city. Holconius associated himself closely with the royal family and was active at the start of the Christian era. This inscription is also found in metal letters in the floor of the second row of the theatre.

• **In the temple of the Genius of the Emperor (Vespasian in 79 CE) in the forum**

Mamia P[ubli] f[ilia] sacerdos public[a] Genio Aug[usti] solo et pecunia sua → *Mamia daughter of Publius, public priestess, on her own land and with her own money [dedicated a temple] to the Genius of Augustus*

The cult of the Genius of the emperor began in 7 BCE. The public paid for Mamia's tomb.

• **On the tomb of Scaurus who got rich producing garum (fish sauce), a local speciality**

A[ulo] Umbricio Scauro IIvir[o] i[ure] d[icundo]. Huic decuriones locum monum[enti] et HS ... in funere et statuam eques[trem] in [f]oro ponendam censuerunt → *To Aulus Umbricius Scaurus, duumvir with the right of pronouncing [judgement]. The town council decreed the place for the monument to this man and ... sesterces for his funeral and an equestrian statue to be placed in the forum*

• **The Temple of Isis in Pompeii was restored after an earthquake in 62 CE**

N[umerius] Popidius N[umerii] f[ilius] Celsinus aedem Isidis terrae motu conlapsam a fundamento p[re]q[ui]tia s[ua] restituit. hunc decuriones ob liberalitatem cum esset annorum sexs ordini suo gratis adlegerunt → *Numerius Popidius Celsinus, son of Numerius with his own money restored from its foundation the temple of Isis which had been destroyed by an earthquake. Because of his generosity the decuriones (the town council) admitted this [boy] to their order free even though he was six years old*

This boy's father was a freedman (the cult of Isis attracted freedmen) and rebuilt the temple in his son's name so that his son would have a social advantage in Pompeian society. Note the spelling of **sexs** → *six*.

Political graffiti survives painted on walls. The aediles (town officials) had not cleaned it off after the previous election before Vesuvius erupted. It can therefore be dated to 79 CE. Note the politeness of the formulaic indirect wish **oramus vos faciat** which crops up often.

• A[ul]um Vettium Firmum aed[ilem] o[ramus] v[os] f[aciatis]. dign[us] est. Caparasia cum Nymphio rog[ant] → *We pray that you make Aulus Vettius Firmus aedile. He is worthy. Caparasia asks [this] with Nymphius.*

• M[arcum] Holconium II vir[um] i[ure] d[icundo] d[ignum] r[e] p[ublica] o[ramus] v[os] f[aciatis] → *We ask that you make the worthy Marcus Holconius duumvir with the right of pronouncing judgement*

• Satrium rogant → [...] ask for Satrius (to be elected)

## BCE

- 753 Traditional date of the founding of Rome by Romulus
- 753–510 Rome traditionally ruled by seven kings: Romulus, Numa Pompilius, Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, Tarquinius Priscus, Servius Tullius and Tarquinius Superbus
- 510 The expulsion of the royal family. Rome becomes a republic for the next 462 years
- 498 Larcus was created the first dictator
- 494 The plebeians retire to Mt. Sacer. Office of tribune of the plebs established
- 458 Cincinnatus dictator
- 450 The Twelve Tables, a codification of Roman law, established
- 439 Cincinnatus dictator again
- 390 Rome captured by the Gauls
- 367 The first plebeian consul elected
- 338 Rome subdues the Latin League
- 281–72 Rome at war with Tarentum and King Pyrrhus of Epirus
- 264–41 The First Punic War. Rome defeats the Carthaginians thereby gaining Sicily
- 240 Plays (by Livius Andronicus) first acted at Rome
- 219 Hannibal attacks Saguntum
- 218–2 The Second Punic War
- 217 Quintus Fabius Maximus ('Cunctator') created dictator
- 216 Hannibal defeats Rome and her allies at the Battle of Cannae
- 212 Marcellus captures Syracuse during which a Roman soldier murders Archimedes
- 202 Scipio defeats Hannibal at the Battle of Zama, winning the Second Punic War
- 197 Rome defeats the Macedonians at the Battle of Cynoscephalae
- 184 Cato the Elder elected censor. Titus Plautus Maccius, playwright, dies
- 159 Publius Terentius Afer (Terence), playwright, dies
- 149–6 The Third Punic War
- 146 Rome sacks Carthage and Corinth, becoming the supreme power in the Mediterranean
- 133 Tiberius Gracchus, reforming tribune, assassinated
- 123 Gaius Gracchus, Tiberius' brother, tribune
- 107–100 Gaius Marius holds seven successive consulships to deal with military emergencies from the tribes of the Cimbri and Teutones
- 91–88 The Social War
- 88–2 Civil War between Gaius Marius and Cornelius Sulla
- 86 Sulla conquers Athens
- 82–79 Sulla dictator
- 70 First consulate of Gnaeus Pompeius (Pompey) and Marcus Licinius Crassus
- 73–1 The revolt of Spartacus the gladiator
- 63 Marcus Tullius Cicero as consul suppresses the Catilinarian conspiracy
- 60 First Triumvirate of Pompey, Crassus and Julius Caesar formed
- 58–1 Caesar campaigns in Gaul
- 55 & 54 Caesar takes military expeditions to Britain
- 50 Caesar crosses the R. Rubicon. Civil war between Caesar and Pompey begins
- c.55 Titus Lucretius Carus, poet, dies
- 54 Valerius Catullus, poet, dies
- 48 Caesar defeats Pompey at the Battle of Pharsalus, effectively ending the republic



- 44 Caesar assassinated by Brutus, Cassius and others
- 43 Formation of the second Triumvirate: Marcus Antonius (Antony), Octavian and Lepidus. Cicero, orator and man of letters, assassinated at Antony's behest
- 42 Brutus and Cassius defeated at the Battle of Philippi
- 35 Gaius Sallustius Crispus (Sallust), historian, dies
- 31 Octavian defeats Antony and Cleopatra at the Battle of Actium
- 27 Octavian takes the title Augustus
- 26 Vitruvius Pollio, architectural writer, dies
- 25 Cornelius Nepos, biographer, dies
- 19 Publius Vergilius Maro (Vergil), poet, and Albius Tibullus, poet, die
- c.16 Sextus Propertius, poet, dies
- 8 Quintus Horatius Flaccus (Horace), poet, dies
- CE
- 9 Defeat of the Romans under Varus by Arminius (Herman) in the Teutoburger Wald
- 14–37 Tiberius emperor
- 17 Titus Livius (Livy), historian, dies
- 18 Publius Ovidius Naso (Ovid), poet, dies
- 37–41 Gaius (Caligula) emperor
- 41–54 Claudius emperor
- 43–5 The Romans annexe Britain
- 54–68 Nero emperor
- 61 Revolt of Boudicca (Boadicea), queen of the Iceni, against the Romans
- 62 Persius Flaccus, poet, dies
- 65 Gaius Petronius Arbiter, novelist, and Lucius Annaeus Seneca, philosopher, commit suicide at Nero's behest. Marcus Annaeus Lucanus (Lucan), poet, dies
- 68–9 Galba, Otho and Vitellius emperors
- 69–79 Vespasian emperor
- 79 Pompeii destroyed by Vesuvius. Pliny the Elder, natural scientist, killed in the eruption
- 79–81 Titus emperor
- 81–96 Domitian emperor. He was succeeded by Nerva
- c.95 Marcus Fabius Quintilianus (Quintilian), orator, dies
- c.96 Publius Papinius Statius, poet, dies
- 98 Nerva dies and Trajan becomes emperor
- 98–128 The writing career of Decimus Junius Juvenalis (Juvenal), satirist
- 100 Gaius Plinius Caecilius Secundus (Pliny the Younger), letter writer, governor of Bithynia-Pontus
- 104 Marcus Valerius Martialis (Martial), poet, dies
- 109 Roman empire reaches its greatest extent under Trajan
- c.113 Pliny the Younger dies
- 117 Publius Cornelius Tacitus, historian, and Trajan, emperor, die. Hadrian emperor
- 121 Hadrian builds the wall across the North of Britain
- c.155 Lucius Apuleius, novelist, dies
- c.160 Gaius Suetonius Tranquillus, historian, dies
- 180 Marcus Aurelius, emperor and philosopher, dies
- 274–337 Constantine emperor
- 285 Division of the Roman empire into Eastern and Western parts by Diocletian
- 313 Constantine legalizes Christianity
- 476 Collapse of the Western Roman empire
- 565 Justinian, Eastern emperor and jurist, dies

It is easier than you might think to find Latin today. Look at the side of a pound coin and you may read *decus et tutamen* → *an object of beauty and a security*. This is a quotation from Vergil (*Aeneid* 5.262) and originally referred to a coat of chain mail (*lorica*), in fact the following two words in the Latin are in *armis* → *in battle*. You may also find the motto of the royal house of Scotland on the side of a pound: *nemo me impune lacessit* → *no-one assaults me and gets away with it*. Those which come from Jersey have *insula Caesarea* which was its Roman name. The American dollar bill has on it *e pluribus unum* → *one (state) out of more*. Coins and notes will probably always be the commonest place to find Latin. You will find it used in the mottoes of institutions, especially schools, and Latin inscriptions are still used on buildings today, even if it is only to record the date of construction in Roman numerals. The numerals are also often used on clock faces and to date films and television programmes. Botanical Latin is still used for the correct names of plants and with the increasing popularity of gardening, you can regularly hear it on radio and television programmes devoted to the hobby. Some series of popular children's books are now produced in Latin such as the stories associated with *Asterix Gallus* → *Asterix the Gaul*, *Vinni ille pu* → *Winnie the Pooh* and *Petrus cuniculus* → *Peter Rabbit*. You can even find volumes of Latin joke books. Latin is still the official language of the Vatican and important ecclesiastical documents like official papal letters are written in Latin. The mass is still said in Latin on certain special occasions and the Vatican does much to promote the language, such as publishing its own modern Latin dictionary.

The following are some Latin words and phrases which are still in use today: *ab initio* → *from the beginning*, especially of the learning of languages  
*aegrotat* (pl. *aegrotant*) → *he (she, or they) are ill* (used in university exam notices)

*ad hoc* → *(for this) immediate, spontaneous, improvised*

*ad hominem* → *for the man* (used of professorships, etc.)

*ad infinitum* → *to the point of infinity*

*ad lib(itum)* → *at (your) pleasure*

*ad loc(um)* → *at the place*

*ad nauseam* → *to the point of nausea*

*bona fides* → *good faith*

*compos mentis* → *sound in mind*

*e(xempli) g(ratia)* → *for the sake of example*

*ex officio* → *by virtue of the position one holds*

*habeas corpus* → *lit. you may have the body*. A right not to be detained without charge.

*i(d) e(st)* → *that is, namely*

*in vitro* → *in the test tube*

*pro bono (publico)* → *for the public good*

*quid pro quo* → *something in return for something*

*satis* → *sufficient, enough*

*s(ub) v(erbum)* → *under the word* (referring to dictionary entries)

*sub iudice* → *under the jurisdiction of a judge*, i.e. something which cannot be discussed in case the outcome of a trial is prejudiced

*sub poena* → *under threat of punishment*, i.e. a compulsory summons to court

*sub rosa* → *under the rose*, i.e. secret

ultra vires → *beyond one's jurisdiction*

viva voce → an oral rather than a written exam (lit. *with the live voice*)

Of particular interest to observers of the modern version of the language is the Latin news website *nuntii latini* which can be found at <http://www.yle.fi/fbc/latini>. Click on *transcriptio* and you will find the previous week's news in Latin. It is usually updated on a Monday. This excellent service is provided by the Finnish Broadcasting Corporation. Since 1989 they had been broadcasting the news in Latin on the radio for five minutes after their German and English language news bulletins on a Sunday evening. As a good short wave radio is needed to get a decent reception, the arrival of *nuntii latini* on the Internet was very welcome news. The bulletins cover all major topics of international interest and there are often items of Finnish news. As the writers say themselves, *nunc primum in historia fit ut lingua Latina iam nullos limites noverit* → *now for the first time in history it happens that the Latin language knows no bounds*.

The writers face the interesting and sometimes amusing challenge of creating Latin words for modern objects or concepts. The following are good examples of their skill:

apparatus stereophonicus auricularis → *personal cassette player*

aeroplanum capacissimum → *jumbo jet*

autocinetum laophoricum → *bus*

bos grunniens → *yak*

Circuitus Galliae → *the Tour de France*

cangurus → *kangaroo*

charta creditoria → *credit card*

chartula postalis → *postcard*

cuniculus viarius → *motorway tunnel*

demoscopia Gallupiana → *Gallup poll*

diploma inventionis → *patent*

exercitia aerobica → *aerobics*

grex motocyclistarum → *motorbike gang*

horologium excitatorium → *alarm clock*

liga pedifollica → *football league*

linea diei → *the International Date Line*

machina vectoria → *locomotive engine*

pellicula documentaria → *documentary film*

pittacium epistulare → *postage stamp*

scacista → *chess player*

statio spatialis → *space station*

syngraphus viatorius → *passport*

systema cursus cambialis → *exchange rate mechanism*

telephorum portabile → *mobile telephone*

tempus suppletorium → *overtime*

tramen rapidum → *express train*

uranium pauperatum → *depleted uranium*

virus grippicum → *influenza virus*

In addition to the news there are other items on the website menu which are of interest. A list of reading material including modern Latin dictionaries, a background history of the site, the schedule of broadcasts, a questions page, a letters page for e-mail ([nuntii\\_latini@yle.fi](mailto:nuntii_latini@yle.fi)) and an archive of old bulletins. The entire site is written in Latin but an English version of some of the pages is available.

# key to the exercises

It is obvious<sup>†</sup> that the sentences in the exercises may be translated in a variety of ways. The basic sense is given here but any sensible variation may be used. It is assumed that where 'he' is used with a verb then 'she' or 'it' would be equally acceptable if the context allows it.

## Unit 3

1 a they beg b he/she/it gives c you (s.) care d I drink e we approve  
f you (pl.) prepare g you (s.) give h we stand i he/she /it works j they drink  
2 a servo servas servat servamus servatis servant b comparo comparas  
comparat comparamus comparatis comparant c loco locas locat locamus  
locatis locant d concito concitas concitat concitamus concitatis concitant  
e voco vocas vocat vocamus vocatis vocant f computo computas computat  
computamus computatis computant g muto mutas mutat mutamus mutatis  
mutant h pugno pugnās pugnat pugnamus pugnatis pugnant i adflō adflās  
adflat adflamus adflatis adflant j amo amas amat amamus amatis amant  
3 a vocamus b laboras c probo d probat e potant f curatis g vocat  
h ambulat! i sto j curant 4 a putare, to think b cogitare, to ponder c laniare,  
to mangle d mandare, to command e praetervolare, to fly past f clarare, to  
explain g demonstrare, to show h fatigare, to exhaust i coactare, to force  
j appellare, to pronounce

## Unit 4

1 a fourth b second c first d third e third f third g fourth h third  
i second j first 2 a We run and we win. b You sleep and snore. c He searches  
and he saves. d You see and believe. e They know and are silent. f I inspect and  
approve. g They flee and they weep. h I teach and you learn. i You laugh and  
play. j We dance and sing. 3 a aperio aperis aperit aperimus aperitis aperiunt  
b peto petis petit petimus petitis petunt c advenio advenis advenit advenimus  
advenitis adveniunt d video vides videt videmus videtis vident e discedo  
discedis discedit discedimus disceditis discedunt f teneo tenes tenet tenemus  
tenetis tenent g facio facis facit facimus facitis faciunt h vasto vastas vastat  
vastamus vastatis vastant i libro libras librat libramus libratibus librant  
j fugio fugis fugit fugimus fugitis fugiunt 4 a nubere, to marry b merere, to  
deserve c arcessere, to summon d claudicare, to limp e gerere, to carry  
f implicare, to entwine g placare, to pacify h serere, to sew i statuere, to set up  
jovere, to vow

## Unit 5

1 **a** aedificabo aedificabis aedificabit aedificabimus aedificabitis aedificabunt  
**b** miscebo miscebis miscebit miscebimus miscebitis miscebunt **c** ardebo ardebis  
ardebit ardebimus ardebitis ardebunt **d** mulcebo mulcebis mulcebit mulcebimus  
mulcebitis mulcebunt **e** sonabo sonabis sonabit sonabimus sonabitis sonabunt  
**f** crepabo crepabis crepabit crepabimus crepabitis crepabunt **g** stabo stabis  
stabit stabimus stabitis stabunt **h** fundabo fundabis fundabit fundabimus  
fundabitis fundabunt **i** narrabo narrabis narrabit narrabimus narrabitis  
narrabunt **j** horrebo horrebis horrebit horrebimus horrebitis horrebunt  
2 **a** They will advise and persuade. **b** You will carry but we shall walk. **c** They  
will call and save. **d** We shall wait and watch. **e** They will announce but we  
shall be silent. **f** He will weep and mourn. **g** I shall burn but you will soothe.  
**h** They will shudder and we shall frighten. **i** I shall relate and you will watch.  
**j** He will build but they will destroy. 3 **a** cogitabo **b** volabimus **c** mutabunt  
**d** lugebitis **e** monebit **f** placebit **g** debebis **h** nuntiabo **i** vocabunt **j** habebitis  
4 **a** They give but you will owe. **b** They will beat and I shall call out. **c** You are  
pacifying and they will be silent. **d** We carry but you will build. **e** You walk but  
we shall hurry. **f** They build but we shall destroy. **g** I think but they will fight.  
**h** He stands and will stay. **i** I am preparing and you will approve. **j** We shall buy  
and you will reckon up.

## Unit 6

1 **a** cingam cinges cinget cingemus cingetis cingent **b** scribam scribes scribet  
scribemus scribetis scribent **c** claudam claudes claudet claudemus claudetis  
claudent **d** colam coles colet colemus coletis colent **e** petam petes petet  
petemus petetis petent **f** faciam facies faciet faciemus facietis facient **g** iaciam  
iacies iaciet iaciemus iacietis iacient **h** rapiam rapies rapiet rapiemus rapietis  
rapient **i** dicam dices dicet dicemus dicetis dicent **j** aperiam aperies aperiet  
aperiemus aperietis aperient 2 **a** I shall say and you will believe. **b** We shall  
summon but they will not hear. **c** You will dig and I shall drag. **d** He will not  
sleep. **e** You will begin but you will not finish. **f** They will flee but we shall resist.  
**g** I shall open but he will close. **h** They will seek but they will not find. **i** You will  
depart and I shall arrive. **j** We shall agree but you will disagree. 3 **a** fodiam  
**b** non incipient **c** non ludes **d** adsentiet **e** curram sed resistes **f** advenient  
**g** capiet **h** non credetis **i** non cedemus **j** dormient sed trahemus 4 **a** You will  
resist and you will not yield. **b** I close but they will open. **c** We shall not arrive.  
**d** He runs but he will not escape. **e** You are playing but I shall dig. **f** They are  
writing and they will not play. **g** They will not say. **h** I seek and I shall find. **i** He  
says but you will not believe. **j** You are writing and will not hear.

## Unit 7

1 **a** manebam manebas manebat manebamus manebatis manebant  
**b** muniebam muniebas muniebat muniebamus muniebatis muniebant  
**c** cenabam cenabas cenabat cenabamus cenabatis cenabant **d** coquebam  
coquebas coquebat coquebamus coquebatis coquebant **e** regebam regebas  
regebat regebamus regebatis regebant **f** veniebam veniebas veniebat veniebamus  
veniebatis veniebant **g** leniebam leniebas leniebat leniebamus leniebatis  
leniebant **h** ambulabam ambulabas ambulabat ambulabamus ambulabatis  
ambulabant **i** ponebam ponebas ponebat ponebamus ponebatis ponebant  
**j** sedebam sedebas sedebat sedebamus sedebatis sedebant 2 **a** We were sitting

but we were not sleeping. **b** You were fighting and resisting. **c** You were listening and you were watching. **d** I was cooking but they were dining. **e** He was walking and singing. **f** They were holding and shouting. **g** You were saying and they were not keeping quiet. **h** I was dragging and I was groaning. **i** We were playing but we were not laughing. **j** I was building and you were carrying. **3 a** dormiebam sed non tacebant. **b** dicebamus et audiebant. **c** non spectabas. **d** adveniebam sed discedebatis. **e** assentiebat. **f** trahebamus et fodiebant. **g** stabat sed sedebamus. **h** arcessebat et veniebas. **i** ridebamus et flebant. **j** non videbam. **4 a** He was ordering you were obeying. **b** He will not change. **c** I was preparing, you are cooking and they will dine. **d** We were resisting but you are fleeing. **e** He was not writing. **f** We were carrying, we are digging and we shall build. **g** I was running but you are walking. **h** They were shuddering and we were afraid. **i** They were sitting and they will sleep. **j** You gave and I received.

## Unit 8

**1 a** timui **b** paravi **c** rexi **d** cubui **e** feci **f** traxi **g** tetigi **h** sparsi **i** fregi **j** sensi **2 a** demonstravi demonstravisti demonstravit demonstravimus demonstravistis demonstraverunt **b** secuvi secuvesti secuvit secuvimus secuvestis secuverunt **c** dedi dedisti dedit dedimus dedistis dederunt **d** curavi curavisti curavit curavimus curavistis curaverunt **e** vetui vetuisti vetuit vetuimus vetuistis vetuerunt **f** iuvi iuvisti iuvit iuimus iuvistis iuverunt **g** ambulavi ambulavisti ambulavit ambulavimus ambulavistis ambulaverunt **h** micui micuisti micuit micuimus micuistis micuerunt **i** amavi amavisti amavit amavimus amavistis amaverunt **j** necavi necavisti necavit necavimus necavistis necaverunt **3 a** you built **b** they gave **c** I have called **d** you have saved **e** we have placed **f** they bought **g** he prepared **h** I prayed **i** you have cut **j** we have forbidden **4 a** speraverunt **b** amavimus **c** dedi **d** demonstraverunt **e** vetuistis **f** stetit **g** narravit **h** aedificavi **i** navisti **j** vocavit

## Unit 9

**1 a** credo → *I believe* **b** veto → *I forbid* **c** venio → *I come* **d** video → *I see* **e** potō → *I drink* **f** vincio → *I bind* **g** sedeo → *I sit* **h** custodio → *I guard* **i** teneo → *I hold* **j** fugio → *I flee* **2 a** quaesivi quaesivisti quaesivit quaesivimus quaesivistis quaesiverunt **b** cessi cessisti cessit cessimus cessistis cesserunt **c** posui posuisti posuit posuimus posuistis posuerunt **d** effluxi effluxisti effluxit effluximus effluxistis effluerunt **e** rupi rupisti rupit rupimus rupistis ruperunt **f** lusi lusisti lusit lusimus lusistis luserunt **g** vici vicisti vicit vicimus vicistis vicerunt **h** cucurri cucurristi cucurrit cucurrimus cucurristis cucurrerunt **i** risi risisti risit risimus risistis riserunt **3 a** invenit **b** viderunt **c** mansistis **d** traxi **e** coluimus **f** dixisti **g** duxerunt **h** cepit **i** tonuit **j** cogitaverunt **4 a** he flowed out **b** you have pressed **c** I played **d** they have searched **e** you laughed **f** he led **g** we arranged **h** we put **i** they took **j** you have placed

## Unit 10

**1 a** momorderam momorderas momorderat momorderamus momorderatis momorderant **b** titillaveram titillaveras titillaverat titillaveramus titillaveratis titillaverant **c** solveram solveras solverat solveramus solveratis solverant **d** postulaveram postulaveras postulaverat postulaveramus postulaveratis postulaverant **e** emanaveram emanaveras emanaverat emanaveramus emanaveratis emanaverant **f** captaveram captaveras captaverat captaveramus captaveratis captaverant **g** miseram miseram miserat miseramus miseratis

miserant **h** reduxeram reduxeras reduxerat reduxeramus reduxeratis  
 reduxerant **i** statueram statueras statuerat statueramus statueratis statuerant  
**j** verberaveram verberaveras verberaverat verberaveramus verberaveratis  
 verberaverant **2 a** you had warned **b** they had bought **c** I had taken **d** we had  
 loved **e** you had run **f** he had played **g** you had inspected **h** they had yielded  
**i** you had dug **j** I had forbidden **3 a** steteramus **b** manseras **c** putaveram  
**d** ceperant **e** effugerat **f** dormiverat **g** ieceratis **h** sederam **i** custodiverat  
**j** posueramus **4 a** I had not hidden but they wept. **b** He slept and you had  
 worked. **c** We had built but they destroyed. They had carried and we had dug.  
**e** He had closed but I opened. **f** They walked but we had run. **g** He had taught  
 and they had heard. **h** You had watched but you did not see. **i** You had not  
 changed. **j** I had cooked and they dined.

## Unit 11

**1 a** cecinero cecineris cecinerit cecinerimus cecineritis cecinerint  
**b** accepero acceperis acceperit acceperimus acceperitis acceperint  
**c** vertero verteris verterit verterimus verteritis verterint **d** tetendero tetenderis  
 tetenderit tetenderimus tetenderitis tetenderint **e** tradidero tradideris tradiderit  
 tradiderimus tradideritis tradiderint **f** praebuero praeberis praeberit  
 praeberimus praeberitis praeberint **g** complevero compleveris compleverit  
 compleverimus compleveritis compleverint **h** vexero vexeris vexerit vexerimus  
 vexeritis vexerint **i** surrexero surrexeris surrexerit surrexerimus surrexeritis  
 surrexerint **j** discessero discesseris discesserit discesserimus discesseritis  
 discesserint **2 a** you will have led **b** you will have stayed **c** I shall have called  
**d** they will have warned **e** you will have made **f** we shall have walked **g** I shall  
 have taken **h** they will have come **i** you will have put **j** we shall have left  
**3 a** senserit **b** mutaverit **c** spectaverint **d** debuero **e** fleverit **f** feceritis **g** vixerimus  
**h** petiveris **i** convenerint **j** vertero **4 a** I was afraid and you will have been  
 afraid. **b** You have stayed but they will have fled. **c** We shall have worked and  
 you will have slept. **d** I shall have given and he will have received. **e** They will  
 have departed but you have not arrived. **f** You will have run but I shall have  
 walked. **g** He narrated and they will have heard. **h** He ordered and they will  
 have obeyed. **i** You have asked and he will have replied. **j** He cooked and I shall  
 have eaten.

## Unit 12

**1 a** ero **b** non est **c** eram **d** erant **e** eritis **f** fueras **g** fuerit **h** eram **i** fui  
**j** fuimus **2 a** they were **b** they will have been **c** they have been **d** he will be  
**e** they are **f** we are **g** we were **h** I had been **i** you are **j** they will be  
**3 a** imperfect **b** present **c** perfect **d** future **e** present **f** perfect **g** pluperfect **h** future  
 perfect **i** future **j** imperfect

## Unit 14

**1 a** chartae f. *paper, map* **b** insulae f. *island* **c** nautae m. *sailor*  
**d** agricolae m. *farmer* **e** ancillae f. *maidservant* **f** areae f. *building site* **g** incolae  
 m. *inhabitant* **h** viae f. *road* **i** nebulae f. *cloud* **j** mensae f. *table* **2 a** Sing. ripa  
 ripa ripam ripae ripae ripa. Pl. ripae ripae ripas riparum ripis ripis **b** Sing.  
 regina regina reginam reginae reginae regina. Pl. reginae reginae reginas  
 reginarum reginis reginis **c** Sing. carina carina carinam carinae carinae carina.  
 Pl. carinae carinae carinas carinarum carinis carinis **d** Sing. matrona matrona  
 matronam matronae matronae matrona. Pl. matronae matronae matronas

matronarum matronis matronis • Sing. taberna taberna tabernam tabernae tabernae taberna. Pl. tabernae tabernae tabernas tabernarum tabernis tabernis  
 f Sing. porta porta portam portae portae porta. Pl. portae portae portas portarum portis portis g Sing. clementia clementia clementiam clementiae clementiae clementia. Pl. clementiae clementiae clementias clementiarum clementiis clementiis h Sing. dea dea deam deae deae dea Pl. deae deae deas dearum deabus deabus i Sing. cauda cauda caudam caudae caudae cauda. Pl. caudae caudae caudas caudarum caudis caudis j Sing. femina femina feminam feminae feminae femina. Pl. feminae feminae feminas feminarum feminis feminis 3 a sagittas b rosarum c vaccam d sapientiae e hastis f sellis g ballistae h alis i iustitia j ferae 4 a acc. sing. b 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. c acc. pl. d 1 gen. sing. 2 dat. sing. 3 nom. pl. 4 voc. pl. e 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. f acc. pl. g 1 nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 abl. sing. h acc. sing. i gen. pl. j 1 gen. sing. 2 dat. sing. 3 nom. pl. 4 voc. pl.

## Unit 15

1 a discipuli m. *pupil* b frumenti n. *grain* c venti m. *wind* d mariti m. *husband* e coli f. *staff* f anni m. *year* g somni m. *sleep* h eventus n. *outcome* i belli n. *war* j umeri m. *shoulder* 2 a Sing. oculus oculus oculum oculi oculo oculo Pl. oculi oculi oculos oculorum oculis oculis b Sing. legatus legatus legatum legati legato legato. Pl. legati legati legatos legatorum legatis legatis c Sing. lapillus lapille lapillum lapilli lapillo lapillo. Pl. lapilli lapilli lapillos lapillorum lapillis lapillis d Sing. rostrum rostrum rostrum rostri rostro rostro. Pl. rostra rostra rostra rostrorum rostris rostris e Sing. praefectus praefectus praefectum praefecti praefecto praefecto. Pl. praefecti praefecti praefectos praefectorum praefectis praefectis f Sing. ludus lude ludum ludi ludo ludo Pl. ludi ludi ludos ludorum ludis ludis g Sing. stilus stile stilum stili stilo stilo. Pl. stili stili stilos stilorum stilis stilis h Sing. pullus pulle pullum pulli pullo pullo Pl. pulli pulli pullos pullorum pullis pullis i Sing. animus anime animum animi animo animo. Pl. animi animi animos animorum animis animis j Sing. iocus iocare iocum ioci ioco ioco. Pl. ioci ioci iocos iocorum iocis iocis 3 a digiti b officii c camele d somnio e campum f odia g initiorum h medicis i funambulos j ferro 4 a 1 gen. sing. 2 nom. pl. 3 voc. pl. b 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. c acc. sing. d 1 nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl. e 1 dat. sing. 2 abl. sing. f 1 nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 acc. sing. g gen. pl. h 1 dat. sing. 2 abl. sing. i gen. sing. j 1 gen. sing. 2 nom. pl. 3 voc. pl.

## Unit 16

1 a Austri m. *the South wind* b Histri m. *The Lower Danube* c capri m. *goat* d cancri m. *crab* e administri m. *assistant* f aquiliferi m. *eagle-bearer* g cultri m. *knife* h apri m. *boar* i furciferi m. *rogue* j lanigeri m. *sheep* 2 a Sing. arbiter arbiter arbitrum arbitri arbitro arbitro. Pl. arbitri arbitri arbitros arbitrorum arbitris arbitris b Sing. Lucifer Lucifer Luciferum Luciferi Luciferi Luciferi c Sing. ingenium ingenium ingenium ingenii ingenio ingenio. Pl. ingenia ingenia ingenia ingeniorum ingeniis ingeniis d Sing. Cornelius Cornelius Corneli Corneli Cornelium Cornelii Cornelio Cornelio. Pl. Cornelii Cornelii Cornelios Corneliorum Corneliis Corneliis (members of the family) e Sing. Alexander Alexander Alexandrum Alexandri Alexandro Alexandro f Sing. socer socer socerum soceri socero socero. Pl. soceri soceri soceros socerorum soceris soceris g Sing. liber liber librum libri libro libro. Pl. libri libri libros librorum libris libris h Sing. socius soci socium socii socio socio Pl. socii socii socios sociorum sociis sociis i Sing. armiger armiger armigerum armigeri armigero armigero. Pl. armigeri



armigeri armigeros armigerorum armigeris armigeris j Sing. studium studium studium studii studio studio. Pl. studia studia studia studiorum studiis studiis  
**3 a** liberorum **b** trifurcifero **c** ministrum **d** pueris **e** oleastris **f** fibri **g** Tiberi  
**h** fabri **i** magistros **j** semiviro **4 a** acc. pl. **b** 1 nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. **c** 1 dat. sing. 2 abl. sing. **d** 1 gen. sing. 2 nom. pl. 3 voc. pl. **e** 1 voc. sing. 2 gen. sing. 3 nom. pl. 4 voc. pl. **f** 1 acc. sing. 2 gen. pl. **g** 1 gen. sing. 2 nom. pl. 3 voc. pl. **h** 1 gen. sing. 2 nom. pl. 3 voc. pl. **i** 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. **j** 1 nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl.

## Unit 17

**1 a** temporis n. *time* **b** consulis m. *consul* (chief magistrate) **c** capitis n. *head* **d** militis m. *soldier* **e** coniugis m. or f. *spouse* **f** iudicis m. *judge* **g** tempestatis f. *storm* **h** clamoris m. *shout* **i** operis n. *work* **j** doloris m. *pain* **2 a** amor → *love* **b** paries → *wall* (of a house) **c** aetas → *age* **d** custos → *guard* **e** nomen → *name* **f** sal → *salt*, *wit* **g** virtus → *valour* **h** pecus → *beast, head of cattle, sheep, herd animal* **i** aequor → *a level surface* (plain, sea etc.) **j** homo → *human being*  
**3 a** Sing. flos flos florem floris flori flore. Pl. flores flores flores florum floribus floribus **b** Sing. dignitas dignitas dignitatem dignitatis dignitati dignitate. Pl. dignitates dignitates dignitatum dignitatus dignitatus **c** Sing. pes pes pedem pedis pedi pede. Pl. pedes pedes pedes pedum pedibus pedibus **d** Sing. aestas aestas aestatem aestatis aestati aestate. Pl. aestates aestates aestatum aestatibus aestatibus **e** Sing. princeps princeps principem principis principi principe. Pl. principes principes principes principum principibus principibus **f** Sing. anser anser anserem anseris anseri anserem. Pl. anseres anseres anseres anserum anseribus anseribus **g** Sing. laus laus laudem laudis laudi laude. Pl. laudes laudes laudes laudum laudibus laudibus **h** Sing. virgo virgo virginem virginis virgini virgine. Pl. virgines virgines virgines virginum virginibus virginibus **i** Sing. sol sol solem solis soli sole. Pl. soles soles soles solum solibus solibus **j** Sing. carmen carmen carmen carminis carmini carmine. Pl. carmina carmina carmina carminum carminibus carminibus  
**4 a** acc. sing. **b** abl. sing. **c** dat. sing. **d** gen. pl. **e** 1 nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 acc. sing. **f** 1 nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl. **g** gen. sing. **h** 1 nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl. **i** 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. **j** 1 nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl.

## Unit 18

**1 a** cladis f. *disaster* **b** ignis m. *fire* **c** imbris m. *rain cloud, shower* **d** amnis m. *river* **e** vectigalis n. *tax* **f** sedilis n. *chair* **g** avis f. *bird* **h** vallis f. *valley* **i** clavis f. *key* **j** iubaris n. *sunbeam* **2 a** aries *ram* **b** ensis *sword* **c** cutis *skin* **d** securis *axe* **e** ovis *sheep* **f** crinis *hair* **g** axis *axle* **h** frons *foliage* **i** orbis *globe, circle* **j** conclave *room* **3 a** Sing. puppis puppis puppim puppis puppi puppe. Pl. puppes puppes puppis puppium puppibus puppibus **b** Sing. moles moles molem molis moli mole. Pl. moles moles moles molium molibus molibus  
**4 a** dat. sing. **b** gen. sing. **c** 1 nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 acc. sing. **d** 1 nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 gen. sing. 4 acc. pl. (alternative) **e** acc. sing. **f** 1 nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 gen. sing. 4 acc. pl. (alternative) **g** gen. pl. **h** abl. sing. **i** 1 nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl. **j** 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl.

## Unit 19

**1 a** Sing. saltus saltus saltum saltui saltu. Pl. saltus saltus saltus saltuum saltibus saltibus **b** Sing. portus portus portum portus portui portu. Pl. portus portus portus portuum portibus portibus **c** Sing. cornu cornu cornu cornus

cornu cornu. Pl. cornua cornua cornua cornuum cornibus cornibus **d** Sing. tribus tribus tribum tribus tribui tribu. Pl. tribus tribus tribus tribuum tribubus tribubus **e** Sing. porticus porticus porticum porticus porticui porticu. Pl. porticus porticus porticus porticum porticibus porticibus **f** Sing. ictus ictus ictum ictus ictui ictu. Pl. ictus ictus ictus ictuum ictibus ictibus **g** Sing. gemitus gemitus gemitum gemitui gemitu. Pl. gemitus gemitus gemitus gemituum gemitibus gemitibus **h** Sing. exitus exitus exitum exitui exitu. Pl. exitus exitus exitus exituum exitibus exitibus **i** Sing. impetus impetus impetum impetus impetui impetu. Pl. impetus impetus impetus impetuum impetibus impetibus **j** Sing. manus manus manum manus manui manu. Pl. manus manus manus manuum manibus manibus **2 a** gen. pl. **b** acc. sing. **c** 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. **d** abl. sing. **e** 1 nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 gen. sing. 4 nom. pl. 5 voc. pl. 6 acc. pl. **f** dat. sing. **g** 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. **h** abl. sing. **i** 1 nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 gen. sing. 4 nom. pl. 5 voc. pl. 6 acc. pl. **j** gen. pl. **3 a** 4th **b** 2nd **c** 4th **d** 2nd **e** 4th **f** 4th **g** 2nd **h** 2nd **i** 4th **j** 4th **4 a** census **b** circumiectibus **c** currus **d** electus **e** anuum **f** usui **g** fructibus **h** cursum **i** domitu **j** rictus

## Unit 20

**1 a** progeniei *progeny, descendants, children* **b** pauperiei *poverty* **c** caesariei *hair* **d** tristitiei *sorrow* **e** permitiei *ruin* **f** congeriei *heap* **g** temperiei *mildness, temperature, due proportion* **h** materiei *matter, substance, timber* **i** maciei *meagreness, leanness* **j** planitiei *level ground, plain* **2 a** Sing. glacies glacies glaciem glaciei glaciei glacie **b** Sing. canities canities canitiem canitiei canitiei canitie **c** Sing. acies acies aciem aciei aciei acie. Pl. acies acies acies acierum aciebus aciebus **d** Sing. effigies effigies effigiem effigiei effigiei effigie. Pl. effigies effigies effigies effigierum effigiebus effigiebus **e** Sing. superficies superficies superficiem superficiei superficiei superficie. Pl. superficies superficies superficies superficierum superficiebus superficiebus **f** Sing. fides fides fidem fidei fidei fide. Pl. fides fides fides fiderum fidebus fidebus **g** Sing. meridies meridies meridiem meridei meridei meridie. Pl. meridies meridies meridies meriderum meridebus meridebus **h** Sing. spes spes spem spei spei spe. Pl. spes spes sperum spebus spebus **i** Sing. species species speciem speciei speciei specie. Pl. species species species specierum speciebus speciebus **j** Sing. diluvies diluvies diluviem diluviei diluviei diluvie. Pl. diluvies diluvies diluvies diluvierum diluviebus diluviebus **3 a** acc. sing. **b** gen. pl. **c** 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. **d** 1 gen. sing. 2 dat. sing. **e** abl. sing. **f** 1 nom. sing. 2 voc. sing. 3 nom. pl. 4 voc. pl. 5 acc. pl. **g** acc. sing. **h** abl. sing. **i** acc. sing. **j** abl. sing.

## Unit 21

**1 a** Hylas Hyla Hylan Hylae Hylae Hyla **b** Daphne Daphne Daphnen Daphnes Daphnae Daphne **c** Sing. Atrides Atrides (or Atride) Atriden Atridae Atridae Atride. Pl. Atrides Atrides Atridas Atridum Atridis Atridis **d** Hecate Hecate Hecaten Hecates Hecatae Hecate **e** Sing. harpe harpe harpen harpes harpae harpe. Pl. harpae harpae harpas harparum harpis harpis **f** Boreas Borea Borean Boreae Boreae Borea **g** Sing. crambe crambe cramben crambes crambae crambe. Pl. crambes crambes crambas crambarum crambis crambis **h** Cybele Cybele Cybelen Cybeles Cybelae Cybele **i** Cyrene Cyrene Cyrenen Cyrenes Cyrenae Cyrene **j** Hebe Hebe Heben Hebes Hebae Hebe **2 a** Sing. lampas lampas lampada lampadis lampadi lampade. Pl. lampades lampades lampadas

lampadum lampadibus lampadibus **b** Sing. lynx lynx lyncem lyncis lynci lynce. Pl. lynces lynces lynces or lyncas lyncum lyncibus lyncibus **c** Babylon Babylon Babylonem Babylonis Babylo ni Babylo ne **d** Agamemnon Agamemnon Agamemnona Agamemnons Agamemnoni Agamemnone **e** Pericles Pericles (or Pericle) Periclen Periclis (or Pericli) Pericli Pericle **f** Rhodos Rhodos Rhodon Rhodi Rhodo Rhodo **g** Paris Pari (or Paris) Parin (or Parim, Paridem or Parida) Paridis (or Paridos) Paridi Paride **h** Orpheus Orpheus (or Orpheu) Orphea Orphei (or Orpheos) Orphei Orptheo **i** Chios Chios Chion Chii Chio Chio **j** Sing. heros heros heroa (or heroem) herois heroi heroe. Pl. heroes heroes heroas heroum heroibus heroibus **3 a** 1 dat. sing. 2 abl. sing. **b** acc. sing. **c** gen. sing. **d** gen. sing. **e** acc. sing. **f** acc. pl. **g** voc. sing. **h** 1 gen. sing. 2 dat. sing. 3 nom. pl. 4 voc. pl. **i** acc. sing. **j** gen. sing. **4 a** poematis n. poem **b** Euripidis m. Euripides, an Athenian tragedian **c** Phlegethontis m. Phlegethon, a river in Hades (the Underworld) **d** Trois m. Tros, a king of Phrygia (after whom Troy was named) **e** Sophoclis m. Sophocles, an Athenian tragedian **f** Euridices f. Eurydice, wife of Orpheus **g** psephismatis n. decree of the people, vote **h** Diones f. Dione, mother of Venus **i** Theseos (or Thesei) m. Theseus, the Greek hero who slew the Minotaur **j** Lemni f. Lemnos, an Aegean island

## Unit 22

**1 a** acc. sing. from vis **b** 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. from vir **c** acc. pl. from vir **d** acc. sing. or alternative gen. pl. from vir **e** 1 dat. pl. 2 abl. pl. from vis **f** gen. pl. from vir **g** abl. sing. from vis **h** 1. gen. sing. 2 nom. pl. 3 voc. pl. from vir **i** gen. pl. from vis **j** 1 nom. pl. 2 voc. pl. 3 acc. pl. from vis **2 a** Sing. frater frater fratrem fratris fratri fratre. Pl. fratres fratres fratres fratrum fratribus fratribus **b** Sing. iuvenis iuvenis iuvenem iuvenis iuveni iuvene. Pl. iuvenes iuvenes iuvenes iuvenum iuvenibus iuvenibus **c** Sing. mater mater matrem matris matri matre. Pl. matres matres matres matrum matribus matribus **d** Sing. canis canis canem canis cani cane. Pl. canes canes canes canum canibus canibus **e** Sing. pater pater patrem patris patri patre. Pl. patres patres patres patrum patribus patribus **f** Sing. sedes sedes sedem sedis sedi sede. Pl. sedes sedes sedes sedum sedibus sedibus **g** Sing. accipiter accipiter accipitrem accipitris accipitri accipitre. Pl. accipitres accipitres accipitres accipitrum accipitribus accipitribus **h** Sing. mensis mensis mensem mensis mensi mense. Pl. menses menses menses mensum mensibus mensibus **i** Sing. volucris volucris volucrum volucris volucris volucre. Pl. volucres volucres volucres volucrum volucris volucris **j** Sing. vates vates vatem vatis vati vate. Pl. vates vates vates vatium vatibus vatibus

## Unit 23

**1 a** box **b** pirates **c** we **d** it **e** onions, cabbages **f** Marius **g** diamonds **h** ostriches **i** you **j** dish **2 a** The foot soldiers walked but the commander rode. **b** The cranes had flown away. **c** The emperor is not laughing. **d** The hare did not win. **e** We are gladiators. **f** Cassius is asleep. **g** The soldier and the sailor were drinking. **h** The high priest has spoken and the people will obey. **i** The teacher was teaching but the pupils were not listening. **j** Hercules laboured for a long time. **3 a** Merlin was a wizard. **b** The pauper will be a prince. **c** The dog is a nuisance. **d** Pheidias was a master craftsman. **e** Temples are buildings. **f** The looters are prisoners. **g** Public speakers are liars. **h** The Romans were victors. **i** The praetorian guardsmen will be the assassins. **j** Brutus had been consul. **4 a** Master, the guests are departing. **b** Hello farmers! **c** Valeria, Titus, the boy

is falling. **d** Centurion, the captives have escaped. **e** The enemy are arriving, soldiers! **f** Valerius, Julius and Tiberius are running. **g** Hello son. **h** Father, spring is on the way. **i** Where are you, Marcus? **j** Fortune, you are a goddess.

## Unit 24

**1 a** dog **b** boxes **c** misery **d** boats **e** mother **f** dung **g** wall **h** signal **i** orders **j** disease **2 a** The hunters heard the shouts. **b** The teachers were teaching the boys. **c** The druids have sacrificed a bull. **d** Master, the slaves are carrying the bread. **e** The squirrels were hiding nuts. **f** The workmen are building a wall. **g** The soldiers made Claudius emperor. **h** The girls applauded the actor. **i** The miser loves money. **j** The ship has struck a rock. **3 a** senator socios vocat. **b** flumen agros inundavit. **c** Hercules hydram oppugnavit. **d** Aemiliam pueri amant. **e** Galli Romanos timent. **f** custodes portas clausurunt. **g** canes pastorem spectant. **h** agricola aves liberavit. **i** aurum celant. **j** feles aquam non amant. **4 a** Oh unbelievable foulness! **b** I am well in (my) body. **c** He walked for twenty paces. **d** O wonderful courage! **e** The soldier is six feet tall. **f** I was wounded in the hands. **g** The lake was a hundred feet deep. **h** The horse is lame in the leg. **i** O fickle glory! **j** His limbs were bare (lit. He was bare in the limbs).

## Unit 25

**1 a** The boy is reciting the verses of Vergil. **b** I am learning the art of riding. **c** I never open the door of the house. **d** The shepherd loves the daughter of the king. **e** You have heard the children's voices. **f** The barber is counting the hairs of the old man's head. **g** We fear the troop of soldiers. **h** It is the job of a doctor to cure the sick. **i** The threats of the enemy were frightening the children. **j** Heaps of dung are blocking the road. **k** The maidservants heard the sounds of thunder. **l** The citizens approve a man of honesty. **m** Hannibal lost the sight of an eye. **n** The waters of the river flowed slowly. **o** The crown of jewels shone. **p** It is the duty of a leader to look after the city. **q** The elephants are carrying masses of rocks. **r** We do not see the soldiers' wounds. **s** The scouts were looking at the peaks of the mountains. **t** They were learning the language of the Romans. **2 a** onera terga asellorum premunt. **b** Cassius est vir crudelitatis capax. **c** viri oppidi non pugnabunt. **d** servi togas dominorum lavant. **e** undas maris amamus. **f** amor belli humanitatem delet. **g** lucem ignis non viderunt. **h** halitum canis non amo. **i** sapientia reginae navem servavit. **j** pondus argenti habeo. **k** est nautae navigare. **l** praemium virtutis gloria est. **m** domum poetae amabis. **n** amor pecuniae radix mali est. **o** acervum ovorum invenimus. **p** amor matris liberos sustinet. **q** Romani nomen regis non amabant. **r** thesaurum magi quaerimus. **s** mater Bruti dormiebat. **t** virum centum annorum scio.

## Unit 26

**1 a** The farmer is mindful of the war. **b** The citizens value dignity at a great price. **c** The miners have found some gold. **d** Where in the world were we? **e** For how large a price did you buy the house? **f** The poor men used to lack shoes. **g** A thief values honesty little. **h** The senator had swallowed a lot of poison. **i** He is carrying enough burdens. **j** The climbers had too little rope. **k** The general saw less of the battle. **l** The girls were carrying some bread. **m** The fox has taken so much cheese. **n** We destroyed part of the wall. **o** Do you have any money? **p** The children have drunk too much water. **q** Many of the gladiators were fighting.

**r** Several of the captives are ill. **s** Part of the procession halted. **t** They bought the ships at a great price. **2 a** satis domuum cupimus. **b** equi nimis ligni trahunt. **c** aliquid novi habes? **d** lacus est plenus piscium. **e** corvus aliquid frumenti cepit. **f** memor periculi est. **g** pax multum divitiarum facit. **h** multi liberorum ludebant. **i** nimis fletus vidi. **j** aquae indigemus. **k** hoc temporis custodios dormiunt. **l** parvi pretii fundum emit. **m** pastor partem gregis custodit. **n** pars aciei appropinquabat. **o** puer plus fructus portat. **p** parum salis habemus. **q** quantum fabulae sciunt? **r** partem arboris servavimus. **s** imperator ignavos parvi aestimat.

## Unit 27

**1 a** You are telling a story to the children. **b** We have sent help to our allies. **c** The election agent will not persuade the voters. **d** I have promised gifts for the ladies. **e** The poets were reciting to the citizens. **f** The senators did not believe the speaker. **g** The poor do not envy the rich. **h** The sisters were coming to help their brothers. **i** Caesar has spared his enemies. **j** Arminius was pre-eminent over the Germans. **k** We do not favour the candidate. **l** The conjurers pleased the guests. **m** The citizens trust the priests. **n** The barbarians resisted the Romans for a long time. **o** Vitellia was like her mother. **p** The guards were failing in their duty to the prisoners. **q** The masters gave orders to the slaves. **r** Sulla harmed his enemies. **s** We shall not serve the soldiers. **t** The teacher gave the books to the pupils. **2 a** reginae fidebas. **b** venatores vestigiis cervi studiebant. **c** cursores glaciei diffidunt. **d** feminae spectatoribus intererunt. **e** sociis non persuasistis. **f** victoribus invideo. **g** ignavi pueris non subvenient. **h** dominus servis indulget. **i** oves plaustris obstant. **j** mandata militibus non placerunt. **k** matri favet. **l** vulpes pullis non nocebunt. **m** matrona anulos filiabus misit. **n** sacerdotes sacrificia deis dederunt. **o** iudex sicario non ignoscet. **p** Portia Bruto nupsit. **q** iuvenes nuntio crediderunt. **r** feles canibus diffidunt. **s** moles undis resistet. **t** testes iudici verum dicunt.

## Unit 28

**1 a** The boys were collecting charcoal for the workmen. **b** We shall make peace for future generations. **c** The Romans built baths for the inhabitants. **d** The elephants dragged the tree trunks for the foresters. **e** Father has bought horses for his daughters. **f** You have prepared an ambush for the enemy. **g** He is carrying the bread for his wife. **h** Brutus slew Caesar for the republic. **i** The enemy have devastated the fields for the farmers. **j** The girl plucked apples for her sister. **2 a** The stranger's name was Ulysses. **b** The Carthaginians have elephants. **c** I have sent the gems to my grandmother for a gift. **d** The citizens had a brave leader. **e** They boys chose a place for a fight. **f** The artists sought out the building for its beauty. **g** The summits of the mountains have snow. **h** The scouts have found a place for the camp. **i** The Greeks have a hundred ships. **j** The workmen were sweeping the stadium for the contest. **3 a** The ships were of benefit to the Carthaginians. **b** Brutus was a source of honour to the Romans. **c** The prisoners are a burden to the soldiers. **d** Milo was a source of hatred to Clodius. **e** Cloelia is an example to the girls. **f** The husband will be a source of support to his wife. **g** Snares are a danger to bears. **h** The river was a source of safety to the travellers. **i** The son was a concern to his mother. **j** Catiline was a disgrace to the senators. **4 a** pullos ioco portamus. **b** principes oneri erant civibus. **c** seni dormimus. **d** fornaces pistoribus usui sunt. **e** Romani

amphitheatrum spectaculis aedificaverunt. **f** viginti equi sunt aurigae. **g** suffragatoribus candidatus non audiebat. **h** fures aurum avaro surripuerunt. **i** fustes sunt commissarioribus. **j** impedimenta pompae amovebis.

## Unit 29

**1 a** We shall free the citizens from slavery. **b** The looters stripped the armour from the bodies. **c** The senators deprived the traitor of his titles. **d** The hostages lack food and water. **e** The boxer fights nude, without clothes. (lit. nude from clothes). **f** The soldiers are keeping the enemy away from the city. **g** The philosopher always used to abstain from wine. **h** The girls are driving the wasps away from the baby's toys. **i** I am acquitting the defendant from the charge. **j** We lack planks and nails. **2 a** The merchants made the farmers rich with their money. **b** The senate supplied the citizens with bread. **c** The river was born from springs. **d** The maidservants will fill the jugs with water. **e** The ambassadors presented the consuls with a crown. **f** Romulus was born of a god. **g** The butler filled the guests with wine. **h** Once the mine was rich in silver. **i** The wizard satisfied the king's greed with gold. **j** Mars made the woman pregnant with twins. **3 a** The sailor is steering the ship in a storm. **b** Caesar was wounded in the back. **c** The geese do not fly in silence. **d** The bears attacked the people with speed. **e** The cowards trembled in the knees. **f** The robbers procured the money by fraud. **g** The dog was lame in the foot. **h** The miser surpasses the poet in greed. **i** Cassius is a man of significant public standing. **j** The children were playing with delight. **4 a** exsules terra non expellemus. **b** Achilles dea natus est. **c** loca deserta aqua egeant. **d** bello patres filios sepeliunt. **e** fundus pecudibus abundat. **f** Horatius existimatione dignus est. **g** flumen formidine transimus. **h** cupam lacte implevistis. **i** victores vi abstinebunt. **j** Marcus Titum capite pulsavit.

## Unit 30

**1 a** The fishermen are catching fish with nets. **b** The pupils were writing with pens. **c** The senators reproached Catiline with insults. **d** The boys were playing with dice. **e** The cowherds are driving the oxen on with sticks. **f** The gardeners have decorated the garden with roses. **g** The orator was urging the citizens on with his words. **h** We shall defend our freedom with axes. **i** They burned the cottages with torches. **j** The priest struck the victim with a knife. **2 a** He is not opening the gate for fear of the dark. **b** They were walking slowly on account of the speed of the wind. **c** Cassius is no better than Brutus. **d** I have hidden the gold in expectation of robbers. **e** The children are jumping for joy. **f** The snake is longer than the worm by twenty feet. **g** They laid down their arms out of their love of peace. **h** Dogs like grass much less than asses (do). **i** How much bigger is a toad than a frog? **j** The Romans expelled Tarquin because of their hatred of kings. **3 a** I bought the estate for a hundred talents. **b** A ship is sailing on the sea. **c** The assassin hid the body in the garden. **d** Tarquin bought the books for gold. **e** The friends are meeting in the baths. **f** The horses cost twenty talents. **g** He sold the cow for five beans. **h** The legions will spend the winter in cities. **i** The nightingale was singing in the top of the tree. **j** He completed the victory with blood and the sword.

## Unit 31

**1 a** The bishop's palace was at Antioch. **b** The conspirators met at the house of Brutus. **c** I shall stay in London for three days. **d** Claudius used to live at Rome.

• The Romans pitched camp at Veii. **f** The old man used to sleep on the ground.  
**g** Foxes and hares are playing in the countryside. **h** We are waiting for the fleet  
 at Brundisium. **i** The end of the world is at Cadiz. **j** Plato and Aristotle used to  
 teach at Athens. **2 a** Tomorrow we shall walk to the country. **b** The boys were  
 hurrying home in terror. **c** Soon we shall depart from Sicily. **d** The ambassadors  
 came to Sparta from Athens. **e** The doctor fled from Alexandria. **f** The  
 merchants sailed to Carthage. **g** In Summer we always send the children to  
 Marseilles. **h** The messenger ran from home. **i** The Romans did not always win  
 in war. **j** The king sent ships to Tyre and Sidon. **3 a** The camels will arrive in  
 four days. **b** They cultivated the farm for five years. **c** You received your  
 inheritance in the third year. **d** In Winter the trees do not have leaves. **e** The  
 youths will guard the bridge for seven days. **f** In the morning the farmer ploughs  
 the field. **g** We shall be parents in nine months. **h** The phoenix will rise in a  
 hundred years. **i** In the evening the sky grows red. **j** The geese were honking for  
 six nights. **4 a** *donum domi reliqui.* **b** *octo dies piscatores fluitabant.*  
**c** *quinque diebus Delphos perigrinatores venerunt.* **d** *patrem Lutetiae*  
*expectabit.* **e** *hieme philosophus Athenis habitat.* **f** *cras cantor Corintho*  
*veniet.* **g** *Londinio non vesperi discedemus.* **h** *sex mensibus fabri domum*  
*perfecerint.* **i** *testudo centum annos vixit.* **j** *naves frumentum Ostia portabant.*

## Unit 32

**1 a** The boys are sitting in the goats' way. **b** The does ran to the woods. **c** At  
 Marcus' house jugglers are pleasing the guests. **d** The old man had built a wall  
 around his garden. **e** The crows are flying over the tops of the trees. **f** The horses  
 were swimming across the river. **g** The slave hid the cup behind the seat.  
**h** Cicero wrote speeches against Mark Antony. **i** The valley lay between the  
 mountains. **j** The leaders met on this side of the city. **2 a** Horatius withstood  
 the Etruscans in sight of the citizens. **b** The speaker stood in front of the crowd.  
**c** The judge spoke on behalf of the defendant. **d** I am walking without  
 companions. **e** Cicero denounced Catiline in the presence of the senators. **f** The  
 miser has buried the gold under the floor. **g** We had an argument about the  
 farm. **h** Water flowed out of the spring. **i** The boys were playing with the girls  
 in the yard. **3 a** The baker put the bread upon the table. **b** The Gauls ravaged  
 the fields as far as the city. **c** The camels do not drink before noon. **d** She gave  
 the boy a kiss in front of her parents. **e** They are placing the jewels next to the  
 crown. **f** We are running to the tavern because of the rain. **g** The crocodile lies  
 hidden underneath the river bank. **h** You are seeking power for the sake of  
 money. **i** In the Summer the children will sleep outside their bedrooms.  
**4 a** *poema honoris gratia scribes.* **b** *inter casas equitavit.* **c** *clam custodes portas*  
*aperuerunt.* **d** *cras e silvis discedemus.* **e** *animalia dormiebant, praeter anseres.*  
**f** *subter ripam ambulamus.* **g** *statuae prae templo stant.*

## Unit 33

**1 a** acc. f. s. **b** 1 nom. f. pl. 2 voc. f. pl. **c** gen. f. pl. **d** 1 dat. f. pl. 2 abl. f. pl.  
**e** acc. m. pl. **f** 1 gen. m. s. 2 nom. m. pl. 3 voc. m. pl. **g** 1 dat. m. pl. 2 abl. m.  
 pl. **h** acc. m. s. **i** 1 nom. n. pl. 2 voc. n. pl. 3 acc. n. pl. **j** abl. m. s. **2 a** I have  
 found beautiful gems in a wooden chest. **b** Good men do not approve of wicked  
 crimes. **c** Yesterday I bought five white horses. **d** The children are afraid of the  
 black night. **e** The shaggy bears are hibernating in thick woods. **f** The sailors  
 saw dark clouds above the sea. **g** The wretched fugitives wandered through the  
 lands. **h** Caesar cut off the right hands of the Gauls. **i** The youths will fight at

the red rocks. **j** The little ship is lying on the bottom of the sea. **3 a** malefica umbra in imo puteo habitavit. **b** magni et boni nonnumquam ignavi sunt. **c** suffragatores irati togam candidati sordidam non amant. **d** ursi fulvi iuxta flumen pulchrum ambulant. **e** magus callidus in libro occulto scripsit. **f** rex superbus colonos miseros neglegebat. **g** deae dirae scelestos punient. **h** arbor longaeva in summo colle stetit. **i** pulli teneri in nido alto dormiunt. **j** cras feminae fessae ad portam primam advenient. **4 a** bonis **b** boni **c** bonorum **d** boni or bonos **e** bone **f** bono **g** bono **h** bonarum **i** bonum **j** bonam

## Unit 34

**1 a** The bold youths swam across the river. **b** The boys were touching the toga of the lucky man. **c** The boxers fought with equal strength. **d** They built huge walls around the city. **e** The caves of fierce beasts are in the mountains. **f** The old man was walking through the streets with the youth. **g** Women approve of a prudent husband. **h** The magistrates were powerless. **i** The citizens resisted the vicious king. **j** The philosopher has a mind capable of genius. **2 a** I hear the cries of the brave. **b** The minstrel sang sad tales. **c** The citizens obey the famous orator. **d** The journey is easy for the strong. **e** I love the taste of sweet honey. **f** Father gave gifts to all the children. **g** The Athenians used to have a common treasury. **h** Grand parades were marching through the streets. **i** Donkeys are carrying the heavy burdens across the bridge. **j** I have hidden the jewels in a safe place. **3 a** I hear the sound of fierce horses. **b** Augustus renovated the ancient temples. **c** Jason fought with winged monsters. **d** We drink clean water at the spring. **e** The race is not always to the swift. **f** We are applauding the famous actor in the theatre. **g** The poor man was sitting at the gates of the rich man. **h** The pilgrims arrived at the shrine safe and sound. **i** The messengers hurried with swift steps. **j** Elephants are mindful of everything. **4 a** cursor celer tristem civem salutavit. **b** epistulam tyranno crudeli mittam. **c** Marcus est pauperis filius. **d** domus in colle viridi est. **e** Pericles omnibus persuasit. **f** iuvenes veteres observant. **g** leones saporem liberorum audacium amant. **h** Galli viam saxis ingentibus obstiterunt. **i** fortes non superabitis. **j** equum celerem petimus.

## Unit 35

**1 a** It is the egg of a larger bird. **b** I have never seen a worse play. **c** The girl loves the son of a richer man. **d** Nothing is harder than diamond. **e** The journey is longer by road than by sea. **f** The Alps are much higher than the hills of Rome. **g** The Romans withstood stronger enemies than the Greeks. **h** We hear the shouts of more horsemen. **i** The Romans have better buildings than the Gauls. **j** A sheep is a little smaller than a goat. **2 a** Socrates was the wisest of men. **b** The traitor's words were very doubtful. **c** The monster has very sharp teeth. **d** Blood is thicker than water. **e** Some very graceful cranes were flying over the roofs. **f** The pen is mightier than the sword. **g** Gardens are more ideal than fields. **h** The girl was collecting as many roses as possible for her mother. **i** Very many of the citizens searched for the gold. **j** Elephants are much heavier than bulls.

## Unit 36

**1 a** The girls jumped down into the lake spontaneously. **b** The miser fed his children too little. **c** The workmen repaired the crane badly. **d** The old man



instructed the youths wisely. **e** The defendant fiercely denied the charge. **f** Marcus was easily the tallest. **g** You praised Cicero greatly. **h** The Greeks had about a thousand ships. **i** They were not doing business well. **j** Romeo loved Juliet very much. **2 a** We shall always be faithful to the citizens. **b** Master, the guests will arrive soon. **c** Nowhere have I seen a more beautiful woman. **d** We shall attack the enemy elsewhere. **e** He had prepared dinner not long before. **f** I did not stay in the bedroom for long. **g** Cicero has abused Catiline for a second time. **h** Tomorrow perhaps you will see Caesar. **i** He summoned his son again and again. **j** The ambassadors will certainly sue for peace. **3 a** The assassins have very wickedly killed the senator. **b** The poet had finally finished his poem. **c** The priests fled in the greatest safety from the temple. **d** I hurried to the guards as quickly as possible. **e** I walk more easily than I run. **f** Varus waged war worse than Caesar. **g** We have waited for the messenger for too long. **h** The Cyclops was less clever than Ulysses. **i** The horsemen arrived at the city more quickly than the foot soldiers. **j** The maidservant dances much better than she sings.

## Unit 37

**1 a** The emperor provided bread and circuses for the citizens. **b** I think, therefore I am. **c** They were not only building bridges but also aqueducts. **d** Milo is standing outside the gates for he is a guard. **e** The actors recited badly; nevertheless the spectators applauded. **f** I have found neither gold nor silver. **g** Everyone was silent for the master was ill. **h** Both Brutus and Cassius attacked Caesar. **i** Surely you will visit the temple? **j** We have finished our work and so we are walking home. **2 a** The crows fly away as often as the dogs bark. **b** At the same time as the trumpet sounded, the enemy made their attack. **c** As the climate warms, so the seas will expand. **d** Children learn while they play. **e** After their mother left, the boys were crying. **f** Because he has produced the games we praise Caesar. **g** Even if the mountain is high, we shall climb it. **h** Because their enemies are everywhere, so the Romans are always fighting. **i** Whether you will stay or leave, I shall always be true to the citizens. **j** Titus fell down because he was running too quickly.

## Unit 38

**1 a** We shall have finished the building within two days. **b** 1966. **c** The king reigned for thirty-seven years. **d** The chieftain gave his brothers three horses each. **e** The animals went into the ship two by two. **f** In the ninetyeth year the Greeks renewed the treaty. **g** The scouts saw twenty thousand soldiers. **h** The citizens feared the board of ten very much.

## Unit 39

**1 a** Salvius visited me yesterday. **b** We shall walk to the farm with you. **c** I love you. **d** Father told me a story. **e** The Romans' hatred of us is very well known. **f** I shall give you the gold. **g** The judges will forgive you. **h** The knights were approaching us slowly. **i** Several of you are present. **j** We shall stay but you will leave. **2 a** We turn (ourselves) to the North. **b** The robbers have hidden themselves in caves. **c** You favour yourselves for the sake of money. **d** Why will you not forgive yourself? **e** You have disgraced yourself in front of the citizens. **f** I shall keep the gift for myself. **g** We shall never blame ourselves. **h** I always shave (myself) in the morning. **i** They built the house for themselves. **j** Titus has

hurt himself with the knife. **3 a** I have bought new clothes for your children. **b** The Romans have devastated our farm. **c** Your horse is bigger than mine. **d** My geese were honking throughout the night. **e** He defended the bridge with his brothers. **f** O my son, at last I have found you. **g** It is through your fault that the thief entered the house. **h** I do not approve of your plans. **i** He loves the sound of his own voice. **j** Our men will fight against the Gauls. **4 a** villam pulchram meam tibi ostendi. **b** nos equitabimus sed vos ambulabitis. **c** Narcissus se nimis amavit. **d** feminae ad forum nobiscum venerunt. **e** Hercules, gloria tua sempiterna est. **f** gladiatores nostros superaverunt. **g** captivi se servabunt. **h** proditor me non servabit. **i** pater nobis ratem fecit. **j** nautae cibum sibi collegerunt.

## Unit 40

**1 a** Portia loves him very much. **b** Those girls are playing in the garden. **c** We were at home at that time. **d** We love the same woman. **e** I do not support that candidate. **f** I saw the same monster yesterday. **g** I am looking for their clothes. **h** That picture is of the same boys. **i** I have never seen those men. **j** I saved her but I abandoned him. **2 a** These words are unbelievable. **b** The footprints of this wild beast are very large. **c** This day we shall fight for our freedom. **d** I have often heard this story. **e** We have been expecting these men for a long time. **f** Lions live in this cave. **g** We shall run far from this place. **h** Cassius envies this man. **i** The sculptor is making statues of these citizens. **j** We shall not buy this farm. **3 a** We do not approve of that. **b** Those senators have killed Caesar. **c** We shall enter the city through that gate. **d** The speaker pleaded the case eloquently on the behalf of that defendant. **e** I shall not defend the son of that robber. **f** The painters were decorating those houses. **g** The leaders of those nations support the Romans. **h** The youth is watching that woman intently. **i** We saw that man yesterday in the forum. **j** That dog of yours has bitten me. **4 a** eam mox videbimus. **b** haec sunt eadem arbores. **c** illud aratrum gravius hoc est. **d** nemo ista vestimenta amat. **e** id non audivi. **f** haec cena optima est. **g** togam huius lavavi. **h** eodem die ad templum advenimus. **i** sonitum illorum tintinnabulorum amo. **j** eam epistolam ei dederunt.

## Unit 41

**1 a** Who will guard those very guards? **b** She chose the dress herself. **c** Dido killed herself with this very sword. **d** These captives are the children of the king himself. **e** I saw the very same ghost again yesterday. **f** I have given the money to my uncle himself. **g** I cooked dinner myself. **h** The soldiers of the praetorian guard themselves slew the emperor. **i** The crime itself revealed the perpetrator. **j** I have seen the goddess herself in the temple. **2 a** Those whom you love, I love too. **b** Those men are people whom I shall never support. **c** The dinner which you had prepared was very bad. **d** He who dares will win. **e** There are two choices, neither of which is good. **f** Titus is the judge before whom we shall stand. **g** That man is the leader whom we shall always obey. **h** This is the senator whose son Vitellia loves. **i** The gold which I have found is very heavy. **j** That man shall be king who will have pulled the sword out of the stone. **3 a** aurum ipsum quod avarus ipse celavit inveni. **b** fures qui te spoliaverunt capiemus. **c** domum quam cupis aedificabunt. **d** quod vidi non amo. **e** monstrum ipsum non inimicum est. **f** pericula quae timuimus ea ipsa vitavit. **g** viro diffidimus cuius pater proditor erat. **h** feminae urbem ipsam servabunt. **i** fures ipsos capietis. **j** non omne quod fuit est aurum.

## Unit 42

1 a Someone's horse has jumped over the fence. b A certain traveller saw someone on the road. c I supported a certain candidate whom I shall not name. d They hid the treasure underneath a certain tree. e The soothsayer whispered certain ill-omened words. f The assassin killed the senator with certain poisons. g The hunters watched some stags. h We have adopted a certain dangerous plan. i The refugees will depart from the city secretly on a certain day. j We shall never know the names of some conspirators. 2 a What news have you heard? b I have asked each man about the gold. c Who, pray, freed that troll? d The Romans slew each single one of the villagers. e What secret symbols do magicians have? f I shall give you what ever money I have got. g Surely the miser has not left anything to his son? h Is there any woman who will love Antony? i What witnesses will you call to the court? j Whose farm is this? 3 a quis est ea femina? b Titus Romam quibusdam amicis veniet. c fabulam quandam a sene audivi. d Melissa aliquid de domino mihi dixit. e quisque templum vidit. f cuius donum cepisti? g quos legatus eligit? h quemquam hodie vidisti? i cum quibus regina ambulabat? j feminae quaedam tibi non favebunt.

## Unit 43

1 a Which consul have the Carthaginians killed? b We shall climb the mountains by any means. c Cloelia alone resisted the enemy. d I prefer the one brother to the other. e We shall adopt another plan. f We have seen no ships in the harbour. g Cicero received the praise of the entire senate. h Neither girl recognized the actor. i Hercules feared no-one. j Clodia loves the husband of another woman. 2 a The guards have killed one or other of the prisoners. b With such words the orator persuaded the citizens. c What sort of gifts are these? d How big is an elephant? e I shall support whichever of the two consuls will give bribes. f I have got some money from father. g Such a youth will never be a soldier. h With what sort of companions will you make your journey? i Petronius always produces such great plays. j The cook has seasoned the dinner with a little spice. 3 a quali viro Cloelia nubet? b quanta est potestas deorum? c nemo Cassandrea credidit. d alter consul alterum graviter vituperavit. e ego solus Lepido favebo. f cras templa alius urbis videbimus. g utram sororem amas? h desperati ulla consilia capient. i non saepe tales thesauros vidimus. j neutrum fratrem hodie viderunt.

## Unit 44

1 a The farmers sang as they reaped the grain in the fields. b The crocodiles attacked the animals which were jumping through the river. c I see a boy running towards the gates. d The sun melted the boy's wings as he flew. e We heard the shouts of people celebrating the holiday. f We were wading carefully across the roaring river. g The speaker persuaded the doubting citizens. h I have sent gifts to my mother who is recovering. i The cat was watching the mouse hiding in the grass. j We greeted the pilgrims who were approaching the city. 2 a The workmen were repairing the broken wheel. b The defeated soldiers ran to the camp. c At last we heard the messenger we were expecting. (the expected messenger) d I found bones in the rubble of the ruined temple. e The orator spoke eloquently on behalf of the cheated citizens. f The spies, having been seen by the guards, at once fled in different directions. g I often visit my beloved girl. h The priests were carrying a decorated image of the goddess. i The boy likes the shine of polished stones. j The words written in the book were very

beautiful. **3 a** I reproached the boy who was going to jump into the mud. **b** The son got in the way of the soldier who was going to kill his father. **c** I caught the vase as it was about to fall. **d** We fear the coming storm. **e** On the point of crossing the bridge, they dismounted from their horses. **f** They keenly applauded the gladiators who were going to fight. **g** The ladies were walking to the forum, going to buy dresses. **h** This is the lyre of the poet who is going to sing.

## Unit 45

**1 a** ducar duceri ducetur ducemur ducemini ducentur **b** facior faceris facitur facimur facimini faciuntur **c** regebar regebaris regebatur regebamur regebamini regebantur **d** servor servaris servatur servamur servamini servantur **e** capiar capieris capietur capiemur capiemini capientur **f** docebar docebaris docebatur docebamur docebamini docebantur **g** custodior custodiris custoditur custodimur custodimini custodiuntur **h** iubebor iubeberis iubebitur iubebimur iubebimini iubebuntur **i** dicebar dicebaris dicebatur dicebamur dicebamini dicebantur **j** moneor moneris monetur monemur monemini monentur **2 a** you are being persuaded **b** I shall be dragged **c** we shall be cut **d** you will be loved **e** it was being felt **f** they will be seized **g** they are given **h** we are summoned **i** you were being moved **j** you were being destroyed **3 a** The ram was held by the thickets. **b** Caesar will be warned by Artemidorus. **c** Gifts will be given to you by your grandchildren. **d** The dinner was being cooked by the cook. **e** The general will be captured by the enemy. **f** We are hindered by the mountains. **g** The column will be led by Tiberius. **h** Aeneas is wounded by an arrow. **i** We were being praised by the consuls. **j** The seeds are being scattered by the farmers. **4 a** ab omnibus audiar. **b** ab optimis magistris docebimini. **c** orator a multis creditur. **d** fabula a sene narrabatur. **e** canibus spectantur. **f** a servis portae claudebantur. **g** serpente puella mordebatur. **h** navis undis scopulisque frangebatur. **i** cras nuntiabitur. **j** liber a scriba callidissimo scribebatur.

## Unit 46

**1 a** habitus sum habitus es habitus est habiti sumus habiti estis habiti sunt **b** actus ero actus eris actus erit acti erimus acti eritis acti erunt **c** auditus eram auditus eras auditus erat auditi eramus auditi eratis auditi erant **d** captus ero captus eris captus erit capti erimus capti eritis capti erunt **e** ductus eram ductus eras ductus erat ducti eramus ducti eratis ducti erant **f** monitus sum monitus es monitus est moniti sumus moniti estis moniti sunt **g** custoditus sum custoditus es custoditus est custoditi sumus custoditi estis custoditi sunt **h** factus eram factus eras factus erat facti eramus facti eratis facti erant **i** laudatus sum laudatus es laudatus est laudati sumus laudati estis laudati sunt **j** expectatus sum expectatus es expectatus est expectati sumus expectati estis expectati sunt. **2 a** it had been done **b** she has been praised **c** it will have been finished **d** she has been betrayed **e** it had been written **f** she will have been forgiven **g** she had been saved **h** it has been noted **i** she has been punished **j** it will have been built **3 a** The gifts had been given by the king. **b** The asses were oppressed by the burdens. **c** The letters will have been sent by the ambassadors. **d** The crop had been spoiled by the storms. **e** Tomorrow the city will have been captured. **f** The kings were expelled by the citizens. **g** The gems had been stolen by thieves. **h** The very famous knot was cut down the middle by Alexander. **i** The lamb has been snatched off by an eagle. **j** The plans

will have been revealed by the traitors. **4 a** lucernae a ministro accensae erunt. **b** fundi a vilico venditi erant. **c** mater crocodilis consumpta est. **d** rosae pulcherrimae a puella carptae erant. **e** lepus testudine victus erit. **f** a mercatoribus fraudati sumus. **g** umbra a pueris numquam visa erat. **h** agri a militibus vastati erant. **i** haec terra a mago recta est. **j** cives a barbaris excitati erunt.

## Unit 47

**1 a** venire **b** amavisse **c** ambulaturus esse **d** tenere **e** sedisse **f** cepisse **g** docturus esse **h** aperturus esse **i** frangere **j** fecisse **2 a** traditum iri **b** spretus esse **c** iactus esse **d** moveri **e** rogatum iri **f** scribi **g** visus esse **h** victum iri **i** victus esse **j** cresci **3 a** to have fallen **b** to be about to be buried **c** to be about to punish **d** to be washed **e** to have ordered **f** to be about to be said **g** to answer **h** to be about to work **i** to have been built **j** to be sent **4 a** manere **b** agnoscere **c** electus esse **d** clausum iri **e** traxisse **f** volaturus esse **g** inveniri **h** risisse **i** tensus esse **j** currere

## Unit 48

**1 a** I can understand the Latin language. **b** Caesar used to forgive his enemies. **c** You ought to have visited your grandmother. **d** I prefer to live in Gaul. **e** I am willing to sing in front of the guests. **f** The idiots chose to overlook the omens. **g** The young man wished to marry Metella. **h** The emperor decided to build an amphitheatre. **i** I do not dare to provoke the lion. **j** I do not want to sleep in the fields. **2 a** We shall persist in searching for a suitable land. **b** Suddenly the dogs began to bark. **c** We are hurrying to greet mother. **d** You hesitated to pour the water. **e** The boys feared to approach the wolves. **f** I shall never cease to have hope. **g** The children are afraid to leave the house. **h** The ambassadors are hurrying to put an end to the war. **i** Cicero continued to slander Catiline. **j** When will you stop scolding your slaves? **3 a** No-one knew how to untie that knot. **b** The centurion will teach the young men to be soldiers. **c** I shall never learn to play on the pipes. **d** Brutus is said to have killed himself. **e** The conspirators grabbed, struck and killed Caesar. **f** The senators are said to have torn Romulus apart. **g** All spiders know how to catch flies. **h** The bakers were thought to have killed the villagers with poison. **i** The teacher used to teach his pupils to love peace. **j** Nero is said to have killed his mother. **4 a** candidato favere debemus. **b** dormire malo. **c** nare discimus. **d** clamare desines. **e** discedere constituerunt. **f** scit pugnare. **g** te scribere docebo. **h** clamare perseveratis. **i** audeo Romanis resistere. **j** effigiem dei videre cupimus.

## Unit 49

**1 a** regere regimini **b** parce parcite **c** lenire lenimini **d** ama amate **e** agnoscere agnoscimini **f** aperire aperimini **g** responde respondete **h** vinci vincite **i** persuadere persuadimini **j** rape rapite **2 a** Citizens, be warned by me. **b** Seize the day. **c** Bring these burdens to the harbour. **d** Hello pupils. Hello teacher. **e** Accept this gift on behalf of your supporters. **f** Walk with me to the forum senators. **g** Give me the lamp Aladdin! **h** Either learn or leave. **i** Let there be peace in the world. **j** Hello and goodbye friend. **3 a** Don't do that boys. **b** Do not wake sleeping dogs. **c** Ladies, do not buy clothes somewhere else. **d** Don't worry; be happy. **e** Do not be cheated by the shopkeepers, young men. **f** Don't be afraid of the dark my son. **g** Do not eat anything bigger than

your head. **h** Don't you step on my blue suede shoes (lit. on my shoes made from blue pig skin). **i** Do not gild the lilies. **j** Do not walk on the lawn. **4 a** cives, nolite sacerdotes punire. **b** liberi, fortes este. **c** apage Tite! nemo tibi credit. **d** da mihi sal Sexte. **e** pueri, nolite ridere meum equum parvum. **f** noli oracula praetermittere Caesar. **g** excipe hospites domine. **h** id saxum pelle celerius Sisyphē. **i** duc gladiatores in arenam Maxime. **j** aurum tuum in cubiculo cela Quinte.

## Unit 50

**1 a** sessum **b** effugiendum **c** excusandum **d** intextum **e** sperandum **f** adductum **g** valendum **h** sopitum **i** perdomandum **j** statutum **2 a** The sailors were preparing the ship for sailing. **b** Quintilian used to teach the art of speaking. **c** By putting on games the emperor delighted the citizens. **d** Fabius saved the state by delaying. **e** The refugees did not reach the citadel on account of the fighting. **f** Icarus did not have a fear of flying. **g** Claudius entered the dining room to have dinner. **h** The prince is not suitable for ruling. **3 a** The boys have dived down into the river to swim. **b** The tale was wonderful in the telling. **c** The girls ran into the fields to play. **d** The knight went into the temple to keep vigil. **e** The soldiers journeyed to the town to spend the winter. **f** The thing will be easy to do. **g** I walked alone through the wood to be quiet. **h** The secret is wrong to reveal. **i** The chest was hard to open. **4 a** servando dominum servus libertatem obtinuit. **b** amor noster navigandi maximus est. **c** cantus avis dulcis auditu erat. **d** celeriter festinando ad tabernam pervenimus. **e** fas dictu est. **f** Romani fortiter pugnando Gallos superaverunt. **g** Iulius canendo matrem delectat. **h** cutis monstri foeda tactu erat.

## Unit 51

**1 a** Cato was a candidate worthy of election. **b** My wife is truly loveable. **c** The speaker's words are worth hearing. **d** Brutus was a man worthy of praise among the Romans. **e** I used to collect many jewels which were worth having. **f** The very small fly is not to be seen. **g** The consuls put on games worth watching. **h** Yesterday I saw certain horses worth buying. **i** The huge knot was not to be unravelled. **j** The very good cook was preparing a meal worth eating. **2 a** I have proved the argument which had to be demonstrated. **b** Now you must be quiet. **c** Carthage must be destroyed. **d** As she had to be punished, the citizens threw Tarpeia down from the rock. **e** You must beware. **f** We must always respect our parents. **g** Claudius saw to it that an aqueduct be built. **h** We must not be afraid of the enemy. **i** I have said nothing about the plan which must be hidden. **j** Now is the time to drink. **3 a** The citizens were gathering in the forum to elect magistrates. **b** I have hired a Greek teacher of rhetoric to educate my son. **c** The boys climbed onto the roofs to watch the procession. **d** Pliny sought ease to write his books. **e** The hunters journeyed into the mountains to catch wild beasts. **f** The athlete ran very quickly to win the prize. **g** Sulla laid down his dictatorship for the sake of preserving the laws. **h** We have sent a gift to delight mother. **i** Spartacus rebelled for the sake of freeing the slaves. **j** The artist was working carefully to make a beautiful statue.

## Unit 52

**1 a** faciar faciaris faciat faciamur faciamini faciantur **b** secem secetis secet secemus secetis secet **c** regam regat regat regamus regatis regant **d** teneat tenearis teneatur teneamur teneamini teneantur **e** moveam moveas moveat

moveamus moveatis moveant **f** capiar capiaris capiat capiamur capiamini capiantur **g** aperiar aperiaris aperiat aperiamur aperiamini aperiantur **h** cedam cedas cedat cedamus cedatis cedant **i** amem ames amet amemus ametis ament **j** veniar veniaris veniatur veniamur veniamini veniantur **2 a** traderer tradereris traderetur traderemur traderemini traderentur **b** viderem videres videremur videretis viderent **c** rogarer rogareris rogaretur rogaremur rogaremini rogarentur **d** verterem verteres verteretur verteremur verteretis verterent **e** iacerem iaceres iaceret iaceremur iaceretis iacerent **f** sentirer sentireris sentiretur sentiremini sentirentur **g** iuberem iuberet iuberemur iuberetis iuberent **h** ducerer duceret duceremur duceremini ducerentur **i** stater stateris staretur staremur staremini starentur **j** frangerem frangeres frangeretur frangeremur frangeretis frangerent

## Unit 53

**1 a** risus sim risus sis risus sit risi simus risi sitis risi sint **b** luserim luseris luserit luserimus luseritis luserint **c** pepercerim peperceris pepercerit pepercerimus peperceritis pepercerint **d** cupitus sim cupitus sis cupitus sit cupiti simus cupiti sitis cupiti sint **e** dormiverim dormiveris dormiverit dormiverimus dormiveritis dormiverint **f** pugnatus sim pugnatus sis pugnatus sit pugnati simus pugnati sitis pugnati sint **g** missus sim missus sis missus sit missi simus missi sitis missi sint **h** suaserim suaseris suaserit suaserimus suaseritis suaserint **i** paratus sim paratus sis paratus sit parati simus parati sitis parati sint **j** reppererim reppereris reppererit reppererimus reppereritis reppererint **2 a** relictus essem relictus esses relictus esset relictus essemus relictus essetis relictus essent **b** delevissem delevisset delevissemus delevissetis delevissemus delevissetis delevisset **c** laboratus essem laboratus esses laboratus esset laborati essemus laborati essetis laborati essent **d** custodivissem custodivisset custodivissemus custodivissetis custodivissemus custodivissetis custodivissent **e** accepissem accepisset accepissemus accepissetis accepissemus accepissetis accepissent **f** pulsus essem pulsus esses pulsus esset pulsi essemus pulsi essetis pulsi essent **g** dixissem dixisset dixissemus dixissetis dixissemus dixissetis dixissent **h** doctus essem doctus esses doctus esset docti essemus docti essetis docti essent **i** clausissem clausisset clausissemus clausissetis clausissemus clausissetis clausissent **j** sepultus essem sepultus esses sepultus esset sepulti essemus sepulti essetis sepulti essent

## Unit 54

**1 a** Let the gates be opened O guards. **b** Love conquers all; let us too yield to love. **c** Citizens, let us greet the victorious general. **d** Do not wake the dogs. **e** Let us live as happily as possible. **f** Let the hunters beware of the boar. **g** Do not fight in the garden boys. **h** Now let us work carefully. **i** Let the ambassadors approach. **j** Let us hear Cicero. **2 a** Where are we to go now? **b** Granted that Clodia killed her husband. **c** Suppose a monster lives in the cave. **d** How might I have helped you? **e** Why should we support you? **f** Granted that Cassius was afraid of Caesar. **g** Where should I build my villa? **h** Suppose that Britain has been conquered by the Romans. **i** Why should I work for so many years? **j** To whom should I bequeath my books? **3 a** Long live the king! **b** Tomorrow I should like to visit you. **c** May the state flourish! **d** Yesterday you would have seen Brutus laughing. **e** I would not want to see a ghost in the dark. **f** Let our enemies fall! **g** O if only Caesar had not crossed the river. **h** Who would believe Catiline? **i** If only Cato were alive now. **j** I would prefer to ride rather than to walk. **4 a** quis avarum amet? **b** ne ad litus ambulemus. **c** semper pulchre

cantes. **d** ne senex equum laedat. **e** utinam ne anserem interfecisses. **f** cur librum celares? **g** nos imperator ipse ducat. **h** e foro discedamus.

## Unit 55

**1 a** The philosophers were thinking about the nature of wisdom. **b** Don't dawdle, children. **c** Let us encourage the athletes, citizens! **d** We shall suffer nothing worse than death. **e** The king died in his sixtieth year. **f** In the morning we shall set out from home. **g** The workmen are testing the bridge. **h** The horses stepped nervously through the river. **i** The girls followed the procession joyfully. **j** The Gauls had come in through the gates of Rome. **2 a** The tree nymphs were sprung from trees. **b** Tomorrow the Romans will advance on the Greeks. **c** Let us rejoice, therefore, while we are young. **d** The girl is fourteen years old. **e** That master craftsman only used the best marble. **f** The merchant obtained a luxurious house. **g** The slaves had the use of their kind master's garden. **h** In winter the farmer had used up his hay. **i** After the disaster the emperor used to grow very angry. **j** The consuls will discharge their duty very well. **3 a** The sun will soon rise. **b** The cows feed on the grass. **c** The woman has dared to contradict Caesar. **d** Do not ever tell a lie my son. **e** The muggers attacked the old man. **f** Once, the girls had been accustomed to meet at the spring in the morning. **g** The miser has never trusted me. **h** All the boys are frightened of the bull. **i** The guards will not talk about the prisoners. **j** Why are you threatening the young men, judge? **4 a** cur magistratus de pecunia mentitus est? **b** librisne potitus es? **c** noli tenebras vereri mi fili. **d** animalium non oblitus sum. **e** cervum ingentem venemur. **f** cras de consilio loquemur. **g** hostes trans campum lente progrediuntur. **h** non soles diligenter laborare. **i** cives oratori semper fisi sunt. **j** captivi e carcere non egredientur.

## Unit 56

**1 a** Look it's raining! **b** It is becoming for the Romans to keep the peace. **c** Today it suits me to stay at home. **d** It will please you to hear the singer. **e** You are not allowed to go into the dining room. **f** The thief is not ashamed of his disloyalty. **g** It does not please the boys to play in the garden. **h** It is already growing late. **i** We are bored with our work. **j** It suits a wise man to keep quiet. **2 a** Use must be made of the best plan. **b** It is easy to hide yourself in the mountains. **c** Cassius must sail to Greece. **d** It is necessary to tie the fierce dog up. **e** Our men advanced towards the enemy. **f** It is not possible to withstand the Germans. **g** The sailors needed ropes. **h** It concerns us that he is saved. **i** In the morning he is in the habit of greeting his patron. **3 a** opus erit vobis nave. **b** heri ninguit. **c** dedecet nos cedere. **d** mea refert nos discere. **e** potest cacumina arborum videre. **f** a feminis ventum est ad theatrum. **g** mox lucescet.

## Unit 62

**1 a** Has Caesar really been killed? **b** Have you seen my dog? **c** Did that man really steal the money? **d** Surely Titus will not come tomorrow? **e** Have you seen that gladiator before? **f** Are the boys playing in the sand? **g** Surely you do not support that candidate? **h** The flowers are beautiful, aren't they? **2 a** When will my prince come? **b** How did Caesar cross the Rhine? **c** Why don't you love her? **d** By what way did the thief come into the hall? **e** Where are the chairs, maidservants? **f** How long were you lying in the bedroom Quintus? **g** How did you find the ancient city? **h** How firm is this



sword? **i** How many sheep are in the fields? **j** Where did Claudius get that toga from? **3 a** Have you finished the shield, craftsman? **b** Do you love Tiberius or Quintus? **c** How many times does he say these words? **d** Will you prepare dinner or not? **e** Have you visited Vesuvius or not? **f** For what reason are the Romans attacking the Gauls? **g** Do you prefer nuts or grapes? **4 a** *nonne aurum celavisti?* **b** *ubi sunt gemmae mercatoris?* **c** *estne Marcus domi?* **d** *an canis te momordit?* **e** *num fundum vendidit?* **f** *utrum Aemilia Romam veniet annon?*

## Unit 64

**1 a** That man who was sleeping in the cave was very old. **b** Today we want to see those temples which the Romans built. **c** The land from where the stranger has come is almost uninhabited. **d** We have already seen the men whom you have chosen. **e** Whom you will follow we shall follow too. **f** I was waiting for Claudia where the cottage is concealed by the trees. **g** The words which the general had said delighted the soldiers. **h** He leapt in immediately where the enemy were thickest. **i** I know well that man whose son has died. **j** You have never liked the candidate we support. **2 a** London, which seems a very large city, is much smaller than Rome. **b** My wife, who was always a tower of strength to me, is already a grandmother. **c** Athens, which is the capital of Attica, is a very beautiful city. **d** For this reason Cassius became even richer. **e** When this was done, that man departed from the forum very angrily. **f** That man is Catiline who turned out to be a disaster for the state. **g** For this reason we shall not go sailing again. **h** As for what Caesar will do, no-one will be willing to obey. **i** When this was done the Romans rejoiced for many days. **j** Sirius, which is the brightest star, has already risen. **3 a** *avem petet ubi nidum vidit.* **b** *iuvenemne quem Lucretia amat vidisti?* **c** *quod fecimus, omnes tacebunt.* **d** *quam ob rem pompa constitit.* **e** Brutus, cuius gens nobilis est, rempublicam servavit. **f** *canis felem quae murem ceperat cepit.* **g** Augustus, quod erat decus temporis sui. **h** *anserem quae ova auri pariebat necaverunt.* **i** Cloelia quod erat exemplar Romanis. **j** *quo facto spectatores plauserunt.*

## Unit 65

**1 a** Although the woman was beautiful, the miser suspected her. **b** Although the standard had been captured, the legionaries fought bravely. **c** Although the shopkeepers may be unsophisticated, yet I shall buy many dresses. **d** Although the sword is fixed in the stone, Arthur will withdraw it. **e** Although Gaius is only seven years old, he nevertheless plays among the youths. **f** Even though it is growing late, the boys are creeping into the woods. **g** Even though father has left, we are working hard. **h** Even if the gladiator is huge, I shall fight with him. **i** Although you have never seen my grandfather, you will certainly like him. **j** We would have beaten the barbarians even if the army had not been prepared. **2 a** Aemilia does not love Caelius because, no doubt, his father is poor. **b** Cicero slew the conspirators because, he said, the state was in the greatest danger. **c** Quintus will not go hunting, doubtless because he is afraid of the wild beasts. **d** The old man will arrive late because he left late. **e** Cassius hates Caesar because, no doubt, he loves Rome. **f** I sent the dog out because he was chasing the cat. **g** You are rich Cassius because, some say, you are lucky. **h** They have bought rods because they will be fishing tomorrow. **i** Since the journey is certainly long I shall go with you. **j** The boys are quarrelling because they are tired. **3 a** *quamvis Alexander vulneratus esset,*

ferocius pugnavit. **b** quamquam Gaius ignavus est, rotam reficiet. **c** etsi regem necavisses, non effugissemus. **d** etsi flumen latissimum erat, ad ripam pervenimus. **e** mures ludunt quod feles abest. **f** Roma incensa est quod Nero aulam novam aedificare vellet. **g** rex me arcessivit quippe qui me admiretur. **h** princeps veniet cum te amet. **i** Titus non pugnabit quoniam mitis est. **j** quamquam vos videre non possumus, nihilominus verba vestra audire possumus.

## Unit 66

**1 a** Hold the mirror to see yourself. **b** I am guarding the sheep in case they are eaten by lions. **c** The boy is washing the floor to be praised by his mother. **d** The painters will work hard to paint the hall in one day. **e** I have hidden the map lest that island ever be found. **f** The dogs are barking so that no-one approaches the house. **g** Caesar is fortifying the hill so that the Gauls do not capture the camp. **h** I am calling out all the names so that no-one is left out. **i** Surely you will mend the plough so that we may bring the grain? **2 a** I mounted the horse to show off my skill. **b** He was burying the bodies so that nothing would be seen. **c** The merchant made a secret chamber to hide the gems inside. **d** The hunters were stalking the stags to provide food for their children. **e** He had sold the farms to pay off the debt. **f** I bought the dog that Claudius might never be able to hide. **g** The wicked man cut the tree down so that no bird would build its nest there. **h** The girls were reading the books to learn the ancient poems. **i** We had closed the gates so that no-one would be let in. **j** I bolted the door so that we would never revisit the house again. **3 a** The leader has sent reinforcements to help us. **b** We had hired workmen to build the baths. **c** The athlete trained for a long time to carry the torch more quickly. **d** I have hired this scribe to write my books. **e** Quintia, I have sent gifts to delight you. **f** I have large eyes so that I may see you better. **g** He was demolishing the wall to see more of the garden. **h** The shepherd built a sheepfold so that the sheep would be protected more safely. **4 a** panemne celas ut matrem irrites? **b** agricola agrum spectabat ne ulla vacca effugeret. **c** filios habemus qui nos ulciscantur. **d** pavimentum lavavi ne ullum lutum videretur. **e** magnos dentes habeo ut te melius consumam. **f** omnibus arcam demonstravi ne me suspicarentur.

## Unit 67

**1 a** The king has procured so many soldiers that the expedition will certainly be victorious. **b** Father will be so happy that he will give us presents. **c** The speed of the wind is so great that we shall not sail today. **d** It is snowing so much that we shall see nothing. **e** The cat is scoffing so many fish she will soon be asleep. **f** He is falling down so many times that he will break his legs. **g** The pauper is so hungry that he will eat his own shoes. **h** The bridge is so weak that even the goats will not cross it. **i** Titus is such a man that he will help the leader very well. **j** She is running so quickly that she will not see the danger. **2 a** The tower is so high that I do not see the roof. **b** Crassus is such a man that he does not bribe supporters. **c** The rocks are so big that the asses cannot carry them. **d** The ground is trembling so much that I am almost falling. **e** So many sheep are blocking the road that the shepherds are at a loss. **f** This bird sings so often that it always delights me. **g** The wagons are so heavy that the bridge is being broken. **h** He speaks so clearly that I can hear all the words. **i** So great is my faith that I am fighting unarmed. **j** The water is so hot that it can not be drunk.

**3 a** Our mother was so kind that she was always loved. **b** I had insulted the magistrate so many times that I was actually arrested. **c** We had crossed such great mountains that we were exhausted. **d** The girls were crying so much that they actually moved the dictator. **e** So many barbarians rushed through the gates that the guards could not resist them. **f** Tarquin had ruled so arrogantly that the citizens actually drove him out. **g** The elephants were so enormous that the Romans feared them greatly. **h** He painted the picture so well that he received many prizes. **i** He used to ride horses so quickly that at last he was actually killed. **j** He had annoyed so many men that he was actually marooned alone on an island. **4 a** Helena tot procos habebat ut maritum deligere potuerit. **b** Marius tantus imperator est ut milites eum fideliter secuturi sint. **c** Pausanias templum ita amavit ut semper id laudaret. **d** tot sumus ut nobis resistere non possis. **e** puer totiens 'lupus' clamabat ut nemo ei crederet. **f** Cato tam probus erat ut non mentiretur.

## Unit 68

**1 a** When you were wandering in the woods, I was working in the garden. **b** After the thieves stole the togas the doorman was beaten. **c** After Valeria had sung, everyone clapped. **d** As soon as the bull came in, we scattered. **e** As soon as their patron arrived, the clients got up. **f** As soon as they saw the buildings they recognized Rome. **g** When the judge said these words the defendant trembled. **h** As soon as the bridge was broken, Horatius dived into the river. **i** After Milo had killed Clodius, he was sent into exile. **j** As often as the cocks crowed, the farmers used to wake up. **2 a** We had prepared the ship before the sailors arrived. **b** While the sun was shining, the bees were making honey. **c** We shall decorate the hall before the guests arrive. **d** The enemy lay hidden until the column came into the pass. **e** We stayed in the camp until the danger was removed. **f** While the priests were sacrificing, the assassin struck me. **g** The poet recited as long as the crowd remained. **h** He put out the fire before the house caught fire. **i** While the dogs are asleep, the thieves will enter the house. **j** The tribune had persisted until the consul had given way. **3 a** dum custodes inter se clamabant captivi effugerunt. **b** mansistine quoad poeta fabulam recitavisset? **c** leo diu latebat antequam arietem oppugnaverit. **d** audiebamus quam diu orator loquebatur. **e** dum Decius appropinquit canis latravit. **f** quotiens catellam tibi emo, aliam petis. **g** ianuam pulsabimus dum eam aperias. **h** postquam terra tremuit, mons diruptus est. **i** Marcelle, clavum percute simulac adnuo. **j** donec Iulia in ripa ambulabat, lutrae in flumine ludebant.

## Unit 69

**1 a** When the mistress speaks the maidservants listen. **b** When Sulla was dictator, all the senators were in great danger. **c** The conspirators were holding Caesar when Casca struck him. **d** Whenever I see you my voice fails. **e** When they see that gladiator the spectators clap. **f** When you (will) read the book you will understand the story. **g** We were approaching the mountains when the Gauls attacked. **h** As soon as the bridge was destroyed, Horatius hurled himself into the river. **i** Whenever father entered, the boys laughed. **j** As soon as the gate had been closed, the girl kissed the boy. **2 a** When they had left the mountains behind, the travellers rejoiced. **b** When the guests had arrived Sextus handed out the wine. **c** Since the dogs were barking the thieves scattered. **d** When the sun was rising the guards were asleep. **e** Since Cicero had uncovered this crime he

arrested the conspirators. **f** When we had made the journey to Rome we could not find an inn anywhere. **g** Because the hunters were creeping slowly, the boar hid. **h** When Caesar had decided to cross the Rhine he built a bridge. **i** Since the listeners were laughing the poet grew angry. **j** Since they had seen the shore the sailors turned the ship. **3 a** *navem vertebas cum praedones nos oppugnaverunt. b* cum ad litus pervenissemus deis gratias egimus. **c** domum ambulabam cum canis me oppugavit. **d** cum primum tintinnabulum sonavit monachi discederunt. **e** cum Caesarem interfecissent coniurati diffugerunt. **f** cum iuvenes aegri erant fur aurum abstulit. **g** cum ursum vidissent pueri diffugerunt. **h** cum luna clara fuisset versipellis ambulavit. **i** feminae cantabant cum fila deducerent. **j** cum coquus cenam parabat hospites advenerunt.

## Unit 70

**1 a** When the gold was found the miser was stunned. **b** I cannot hear you while the citizens are<sup>f</sup> talking. **c** As the sun was rising, the lady summoned her maidservants. **d** When these words were spoken, the ambassador left quickly. **e** As the soldiers were about to depart, the treaty was renewed. **f** Since a storm was about to arrive, the sailors stayed in the harbour. **g** When the messenger had spoken, the gates were opened. **h** After the victory was announced we sent a letter to our father. **i** After the hostages were killed, the assassin began to despair for his life. **j** When the ship had been repaired the sailors immediately set sail. **2 a** As those maidens sing the sailors go mad. **b** When Claudius and Aemilius were praetors no robbers were convicted. **c** The column wandered through the woods as the guards accompanied the prisoners. **d** When Tarquin was king the Romans constructed the Cloaca Maxima (Great Sewer). **e** As the citizens are in favour, I have put up a statue to my father. **f** As the enemy were about to attack the city, Jupiter thundered. **g** When Marcellus had obtained the money we bought the farm. **h** As the emperor was on the point of killing himself the soldiers mutinied. **i** With Boudicca as queen the Britons sacked Colchester. **j** With a thread as his guide Theseus escaped from the labyrinth.

**a** Iove fulmen coniecturo Iuno exclamavit. **b** te dormienti cubiculum pinxi. **c** lumine extincto in tenebris ambulabamus. **d** nobis scopam visuris, arbiter certamen finivit. **e** fratre tyranni necato Athenienses vehementer opprimebantur. **f** aqua exhausta milites alveum transibant. **g** piscatoribus harundines ferentibus pueri cibum parabant. **h** Mario imperatore barbaros superabimus. **i** castris positos milites panem fecerunt. **j** Mercurio duce ad terram mortuorum pervenimus.

## Unit 71

**1 a** Let the boys eat dinner, provided that they have washed. **b** Let the workmen sleep today provided that they work hard tomorrow. **c** Invite Caecilius, provided that he does not bring his brother. **d** I shall choose a dress provided that you buy it. **e** Let the children talk as long as they are not fighting among themselves. **f** You will certainly see those young men, provided that the girls are also there. **g** Let the boys watch the play, provided that they are quiet. **h** Explore the house boys, provided that you do not wander into that part. **i** Let your daughter choose a husband, as long as she loves him. **j** Let the dogs play in the atrium provided that they do not break anything. **2 a** The poor man is eating the bread as if he may not eat again. **b** The she-wolf nourished the boys as if they were cubs. **c** The boys are playing just as the men are working. **d** Why have

you spoken as if Catiline were not a traitor? **e** My son spends money as if he had received his inheritance. **f** A lion really does live in the cave, just as you often assert. **g** The young men are going sailing as if the winds are not strong. **h** The candidate built new baths, as he promised. **i** The spectators clapped as though the play had ended. **j** A poet makes men wiser just as a teacher teaches boys. **3 a** The fishermen were afraid that the nets would be broken. **b** The leaders are afraid that the reinforcements may not arrive. **c** We fear that Titus may not find the chest. **d** The shepherd was afraid that the wolves had taken the lamb. **e** The teacher was afraid that the children had walked into the woods. **f** The athletes fear that they will not win the prizes. **g** I was afraid that I would not get the money. **h** Cassius had been afraid that the traitor had revealed the plan to the consuls. **i** Is there a danger that we may be captured? **j** I was afraid that Caesar had crossed the Rubicon. **4 a** Rufus gladium gerit tamquam miles sit. **b** appropinquant iuvenes dummodo inermes sint. **c** periculum erat ne murus rueret. **d** coniurator sicario persuasit sicut serpens praedam decipit. **e** veniat Cicero dum ne loquatur. **f** timuerunt ne Sulla eum inveniret? **g** cras apud te cenabo Tite, dummodo vinum tuum bonum sit.

## Unit 72

**1 a** We had doubted whether you would arrive on time. **b** Who doubted but that Cicero would free the slave. **c** There is a doubt as to whether the Carthaginians have really been beaten. **d** They doubted whether Valerius had written the will. **e** It is uncertain where the stranger has come from. **f** You were inclined to think that such a candidate would be very bad. **g** There was a doubt about whether Ulysses returned home. **h** Caesar was inclined to think that Cassius was not loyal. **i** Cloelia was inclined to think that the maidens would follow. **j** There was no doubt but that the ship was sinking. **2 a** Valerius discouraged the boys from making a long journey. **b** The magistrates forbade the citizens to receive the ambassadors. **c** It is forbidden for us to defend that traitor. **d** The king did not prevent the prisoners from being freed. **e** The guards were being hindered from opening the gates. **f** Will they forbid us to touch the sacrifice? **g** The centurion prevented the soldiers from sleeping for a long time. **h** The asses are hindered by heavy burdens from crossing the bridge. **i** Nothing stands in the way of us being friends. **j** Surely you will not prevent us from seeing the gladiators? **3 a** Galli a gurgite impediti sunt ne flumen transierint. **b** Portia nos vetuit anseres vexare. **c** haud dubium est quin Romani vicum incendiant. **d** omina non impediunt imperatorem ne proficiscatur. **e** Corneli, prohibebisne canes ne filium meum oppugnent? **f** dubitavimus an discedere malles. **g** dubito num Servius equitare possit. **h** quidam dubitaverunt num Augustus versus amaret. **i** magistratus, prohibete illum ne domum intret. **j** dubium est num fabri pontem perfererint.

## Unit 73

**1 a** No soldier was fighting so bravely but that he deserves a prize. **b** It can not happen that Claudius is elected. **c** No woman was so rich that she was not prudent. **d** There was no-one who would not follow Alexander the Great. **e** There is no-one who does not admire Brutus. **f** No boy is so good that he does not steal my apples. **g** It cannot happen that Caesar becomes dictator. **h** It cannot happen that Cloelia be given back. **i** There is no-one who does not believe that speaker. **j** There is no leader so harsh as not to spare prisoners.

**2 a** Why should the tribune not stand up to the consul? **b** That gladiator is very famous; indeed he will soon be a freedman. **c** Well then brother, save the infant! **d** Why should the refugee not stay here? **e** The young men were very strong; indeed Hercules had killed a lion. **f** So move the flock then, shepherds. **g** Why should a mother not love her son? **h** Well come on boys, catch the ball. **i** How couldn't you have seen that ball? **j** Why should we not pick those flowers?

**3 a** Caecilius non tam pauper est quin maiorem domum emere possit. **b** non potest fieri quin foedus renovetur. **c** nemo erat quin de nuptiis non cognoverit. **d** nullus nodus tam implicatus est quin solvi possit. **e** quin Sextus nos credat? **f** Quintus me non amat; quin heri me vituperavit. **g** quin Felix equum vendat? **h** nullus miles est quin mortem timeat. **i** quin carpite diem liberi. **j** quin dominum tam crudelem adverser?

## Unit 74

**1 a** If Metella marries Aemilius, the mothers of both will be happy. **b** If the Romans take Alexandria, they will rule Egypt. **c** Unless you free us you will hear nothing of your friend. **d** If Aulus catches a large fish we shall eat it today. **e** If you do not give me a present tomorrow I shall howl. **f** Unless Fabius runs he will not catch the hare. **g** The house will certainly collapse unless the walls are repaired. **h** If you send the emperor a letter he will give you advice. **i** If the cow gives birth to a bullock I shall not sell him. **j** Unless you come to me, I shall come to you. **2 a** Unless you have got the money, we have lost the farm. **b** If the brigands were not careful they were in great danger. **c** If you are leaving, we are happy. **d** If the birds are singing, Spring is on the way. **e** If we saw any ship we ran to the harbour. **f** If you have not seen Naples you clearly have not lived. **g** If Clodia loved you, you were very fortunate. **h** Unless Egnatius smiles his wife is wretched. **i** If they were not working in the fields they wasted the whole day. **j** If I have insulted the magistrate I have been very foolish. **3 a** Ask mother, if you can find her. **b** If the door has not been closed the dog will escape. **c** If I have sold broken jars, the money will be returned to you. **d** If the boys were absent they will pay the penalty. **e** If Sempronia loves Quintus let her inform him. **f** Young man, drink the potion, unless you are afraid. **g** If you ever looked at me I used to blush. **h** Kill the traitor unless he confesses. **i** Seize the opportunity if it is being offered to you. **j** If you have seen that beautiful city, you are truly fortunate. **4 a** nisi coquus pavonem accendat, cena optima erit. **b** si Cyrus vas fregit, punietur. **c** si potionem biberis iuventute sempiterna uteris. **d** urbs capietur nisi legatus foedus renovaverit. **e** si captivi non vincti sunt, custodes officium neglexerunt. **f** si pons fractus est, exercitus transire non potest. **g** si Titus mihi tabulam patefaciat, vos ad speluncam ducam. **h** si umquam patronum salutaveramus, nobis sportulam dabat. **i** si Valgus non est in thermis, eum pete in foro. **j** si canes dormiunt, feles superbe circum hortum ambulat.

## Unit 75

**1 a** If the river were wider we would not cross it. **b** If Manlius were not here the meeting would not take place. **c** If the keys were lost, the conspirators would not be entering the house. **d** Unless you are careful, you will be caught. **e** If the river were not being diverted, the town would be flooded. **f** If the vase were broken, someone would be punished. **g** If Cicero were speaking, very many people would be present. **h** If the signal were given, the soldiers would advance. **i** If the children complain, let them stay at home. **j** Unless the praetorian guard support the emperor, he would without doubt be expelled. **2 a** If we were not

Romans we would not wear togas. **b** If father were a soldier he would defend the Roman empire. **c** If I were less careful the thieves would come in. **d** If the citizens were not superstitious they would not worship the gods. **e** If you were attacked, many people would come to help you. **f** If you were in the city, you would see many sights. **g** If I were younger, I would run with the athletes. **h** If we were not ambassadors we would be killed. **i** If the consuls were not here, the soldiers would be less brave. **j** If you were innocent you would not be afraid.

**3 a** If Caesar had not crossed the Rubicon, war would not have broken out. **b** If he had kept the ring safe he would be invincible. **c** If they had not heard his voice they would not have found Publius. **d** If Cleopatra were not beautiful, Antony would not have loved her. **e** If the monk had understood the Greek language, he would have read the book. **f** If he were not a boy, the robber would have killed him. **g** If you had examined the letter you would have recognized the handwriting. **h** If he had not tasted the food he would have been killed by the poison. **i** If you had watched the games you would have seen Spartacus. **j** If the nightingale had sung we would have been greatly delighted.

**4 a** si senatores te expellant, nos ipsi te sequamur. **b** si periculum vidissemus non inermes advenissemus. **c** si via latior esset plaustra non intercluderentur. **d** si Lucium non credidissetis, innocentem damnavissetis. **e** si inter busta dormiamus, umbrae nos terrent. **f** si Larcus benignior esset, servi eum amarent.

## Unit 76

**1 a** We announced that an abandoned ship was approaching. **b** I often say that she is lucky. **c** The Gauls have said that the Druids are not being concealed. **d** I shall say that you are dressing. **e** Do you think that Septimus is feeding the animals? **f** You did not say that the guards were asleep, did you? **g** They deny that Catiline is innocent. **h** You will see that I am very brave. **i** The citizens believe that you are being overlooked. **j** Everyone knows that the Carthaginians are treacherous.

**2 a** We knew that the conspirators would be killed. **b** I think that Catiline will abandon us. **c** Do you think that my plays will be performed by very famous actors? **d** Had you known that Marius would be arrested? **e** Surely you see that the Gauls are going to burn the village? **f** You used to say that Caesar would not be dictator. **g** The bandits did not believe that the island would be defended. **h** The leader announced that the army would set off immediately. **i** I have told you that Helen will leave tomorrow. **j** He denies that the girl will be chosen.

**3 a** Are you saying that she has married Tiberius? **b** We know that the farmers have sold all their cows. **c** We used to think that the fatherland had been saved by Cicero. **d** Surely you see that this horse has been washed? **e** The spies announced that reinforcements had arrived. **f** We shall deny that the old man had found the gold. **g** Valerius said that the soothsayer lied. **h** Do you deny that you have ever seen this woman? **i** We see that the guests have been well entertained. **j** The guards were denying that the prisoner had been tied up.

## Unit 77

**1 a** Quintus knew that he would not pay the penalty for his crime. **b** Marius used to think that he would be killed. **c** Cato scolded the young man and said that he would prosecute him. **d** The citizens do not know that they have been tricked by Tarquin. **e** Marcus said that he had not cut the tree down. **f** The soldiers denied that they had run away. **g** Egnatius says that he was robbed by bandits. **h** The senators had announced that they were going to

choose Pompey. **i** Sempronius thought that she had found a knife. **j** The scribe is denying that he wrote these words. **2 a** It has been said that the Romans are intractable in war. **b** I say that we shall not be caught if we walk slowly. **c** Did you say that you had not been captured? **d** Horatius said that he would guard the bridge. **e** It is agreed that Marius saved Rome. **f** It was said that a dolphin had swum into the harbour. **g** We did not know that you were going to paint a picture. **h** It had been denied that Augustus was ill. **i** I used not to think that the citizens would ever have voted for Cornelius unless they had been bribed by him. **j** I know you will be safe if you heed my words. **3 a** Surely you will promise that you will make the journey with me? **b** The enemy are threatening that they will burn the city. **c** I swear that I will always be faithful. **d** The patron promised that he would give his clients gifts. **e** Are you ordering me to leave the city? **f** The magistrate forbade the bakers to form a guild. **g** We were hoping that you would buy the farm. **h** Publius is happy that his grandfather is recovering. **i** I want you to carry the water from the spring. **j** We are grieving that Cicero has been killed. **4 a** Calpurnia putat se cane oppugnatum iri. **b** Catullus scit se Clodium amare. **c** scio vulpem effugitum esse si porta aperiatur. **d** dictum est Neronem matrem suam necavisse. **e** me promiserunt novam statuam non casuram esse. **f** vetasne me fabas consumere? **g** nolunt nos tapetam novam videre.

## Unit 78

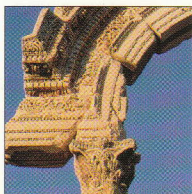
**1 a** Caelia is asking whether the workmen will be working tomorrow. **b** I shall ask whether Hortensius is going to bring his children or not. **c** I have asked when the queen arrived. **d** Tullius will ask Decimus whether the gold has been found. **e** Decius does not want to ask how it happened. **f** Boys, ask your mother whether she wants to hear the poet. **g** Have you asked me whether I am happy? **h** We have asked whether Servius loves Caecilia or not. **i** The tribunes will ask who is going to reveal the plan. **j** Ask how many wagons there are. **2 a** We asked why the girls would not sing. **b** The miners asked whether they were going to receive their wages or not. **c** You surely did not ask whether Titus had kissed Livia? **d** I had not asked whom the leader would choose. **e** Romulus did not ask what had happened. **f** The guide had asked us how we were making the journey. **g** They were always asking when they would arrive there. **h** We had asked how many times Marius had been consul. **i** Surely Sulla asked whether the army had been beaten? **3 a** rogavistine num portae clausae sint necne? **b** roga num pueri in horto laborent. **c** rogabamus num statua viveret. **d** rogaverat num agricola esses. **e** cives rogant quis regina futura sit. **f** rogavitne num vulneratus essem? **g** rogant num cena parata sit. **h** rogaveram num Marius adventurus esset. **i** ancilla rogat num dormias necne.

## Unit 79

**1 a** The old woman is advising the king to buy the books. **b** Stephanus persuaded his master to free Furius. **c** Holconius is seeing to it that the new baths are being built. **d** Sextus was forbidden to touch the drink. **e** The farmers will demand that the king abdicates. **f** We encouraged Plautus to write plays. **g** We shall order Terence to cook dinner. **h** Jupiter had allowed Minerva to help the Greeks. **i** Mother will allow us to chase the chickens. **j** He has ordered us to wash the floor. **2 a** We wish that father would show us the bear. **b** We had wished that Lucius would not be drunk. **c** I want you to marry me. **d** Cicero wished that Catiline had been killed. **e** We all prefer you to stay at



home. **f** The porters long for the burdens not to be heavy. **g** I wish I had found the ring. **h** You wished Cato had been elected. **i** Do you wish that the treasure had been found? **j** Hadrian desires that a wall be built.   **3 a** *postulo ut servum manumittas.* **b** *nos hortantur ut castra oppugnemus.* **c** *curavi ne togae sordidi essent.* **d** *impera custodi ne dormiat.* **e** *vos obsecro ne Caesarem interficiatis.* **f** *te monuimus ne in silvas errares.* **g** *cupimus ut ab aula discedas.* **h** *vetuerant pueros in flumine natate.* **i** *ea ei persuaserat ut malum consumeret.* **j** *eos permittemus ut equum emant.*



teach  
yourself

## latin grammar

gregory klyve

- Are you looking for an accessible guide to Latin grammar?
- Do you want a book you can use as a reference or as a course?
- Would you like exercises to reinforce your learning?

**Latin Grammar** explains the most important structures in a clear and jargon-free way, with plenty of examples to show how they work in context. Use the book as a comprehensive reference to dip in and out of or work through it to build your knowledge.

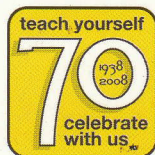
An Oxford graduate, **Gregory Klyve** has been head of classics at Sevenoaks School and The Leys.

Why not try • Latin • or visit [www.teachyourself.co.uk](http://www.teachyourself.co.uk)?

Cover • © Carmen Redondo/Corbis • Ruined arch of corniche, Baalbek, Eastern Lebanon

the original self-improvement series,  
covering over 500 subjects

be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



UK £10.99

ISBN 978-0-340-85959-9



9 780340 859599

01099

